K. Hoadly (S.) 1. Ed 3

THE ACCIDENCE IN Queſtions and Anſwers.

Explained, Amended, Abridged, and fitted to the Capacity and uſe of the loweſt Form.

BEING

AN INTRODUCTION

Into Uſeful LEARNING.

In a new but Natural Method, leading the Learner,

From { Letters to Syllables. / Syllables to Words. / Words to Sentences: 1. Single. 2. Compounded. Where is added an account of the Tranſpoſition, and moſt uſual Ellipſes of words in a ſentence.

By perpetual plain, eaſie, neceſſary, { I. *Examples* to be imitated. / II. *Rules* to direct the imitation. / III. *Exerciſes* to aſcertain the imitation by the direction of the Rules.

Into which is inſerted

I. A *Vocabulary* of *Engliſh* and *Latin* words under each part of Speech reduced into a tolerable order.

II. *Sententiæ Pueriles* conſiſting of the ſame words reduced into plain Sentences under every Syntactick Rule.

In præſtantibus rebus magna ſunt ea, quæ ſunt optimis proxima, Cicer. Orator. Cap. 2.

Inventutem rectè inſtituere plus quiddam eſt, quam Troiam expugnare. Id.

LONDON,

Printed for *John Wright* at the *Crown* on *Ludgate-hill*, 1683.

625. a. 23

K. Hoadly (S.) 1. Ed 3

THE ACCIDENCE IN Queſtions and Anſwers.

Explained, Amended, Abridged, and fitted to the Capacity and uſe of the loweſt Form.

BEING

AN INTRODUCTION

Into Uſeful LEARNING.

In a new but Natural Method, leading the Learner,

From { Letters to Syllables. / Syllables to Words. / Words to Sentences: 1. Single. 2. Compounded. Where is added an account of the Tranſpoſition, and moſt uſual Ellipſes of words in a ſentence.

By perpetual plain, eaſie, neceſſary, { I. *Examples* to be imitated. / II. *Rules* to direct the imitation. / III. *Exerciſes* to aſcertain the imitation by the direction of the Rules.

Into which is inſerted

I. A *Vocabulary* of *Engliſh* and *Latin* words under each part of Speech reduced into a tolerable order.

II. *Sententiæ Pueriles* conſiſting of the ſame words reduced into plain Sentences under every Syntactick Rule.

In præſtantibus rebus magna ſunt ea, quæ ſunt optimis proxima, Cicer. Orator. Cap. 2.

Inventutem recte inſtituere plus quiddam eſt, quam Troiam expugnare. Id.

LONDON,

Printed for *John Wright* at the *Crown* on *Ludgate-hill*, 1683.

MVSEVM
BRITAN
NICVM

THE PREFACE.

IT *may be expected that an account be here given of the Occasions of this Essay, what was designed, what is performed in it, and how it may be used to the best advantage.*

I. *The Author had many and many a time considered with a concern proportionable to the import of the matter,* what *they were he had undertaken to assist, instruct, and guide,* viz. *Men, incorporated immortal spirits, the top of this inferiour Creation, the conspicuous Images of God, the purchase of the precious Blood of the Son of God, and the charge of the Holy Spirit.*

He had considered the Relations they stand in, That they are the property, the subjects, and the beneficiaries of Heaven, Sacred to the Blessed Trinity in Baptism, the Covenanted members of Christ, the children of God, and the heirs of the Kingdom of Heaven; that they are dear counterparts of their Parents, the hopeful members of Families, of the Church and of the Kingdom; and that in likelihood they are to make no inconsiderable figure in the Oeconomical, Civil and Ecclesiastical States, where their stations and aspects will be of beneficial or malignant influence upon their fellow Creatures.

He had considered their Natural endowments, their faculties of understanding, willing, and Performing, and their superadded helps; what they are enabled to do, and what their make, powers, aids, and the circumstances of their state evidenced they were bound to do.

He had considered them as in this state of trial, passing apace to an unchangeable one, under the regulation of Divine Laws, which are by them conscientiously to be kept, and under a course of means which are by them carefully to be used, and under the want of that further grace and assistance that is not to be expected but upon the good use of, and improvement by, what hath been already received; and that after a few days they must all appear before the Judgment-seat of Christ, to give up an exact account of the intrusted Talents, their improvement of them, their observation of his Laws, &c. *and after an impartial hearing, be adjudged to an unrepealable destiny of unconceivable bliß or wo, according to their works, and receive the things done in the body, according to that they have done, whither it be good or bad.*

He had considered not only the constitution of the Creator that they should come into the world void of actual understanding what they were to do, unable to chuse, or refuse with reason, and unexperienced in their future work, but also the deplorable depravation of their natures, the infectious influence of the converse and example of them about them, the power, malice, and cunning of their great adversary, so that if all this could work their ruin, they would certainly be eternally lost.

He could not but observe that they are such Creatures whose life, necessity and pleasure it is to be perpetually in Act; that their faculties are, and will be, unceſſantly imployed in making observations, framing Ideas, inferring consequences, affecting things according to such apprehensions, and acting suitably to their judgments and affections; and that the first impressions are as difficultly obliterated as they are greedily received. So that in their case it is impossible but that they must, unless they be carefully directed and assisted, err in almost all their processes.

For I. *all that important work of so absolute necessity, and mighty consequence, bound upon them by the highest Authority, under the most tremendous sanctions, will most certainly be either wholly omitted, or medled with to no purpose, unless their* Powers *be excited, managed, exercised, and so habituated to a regular and skilful performance of it.*

II. *Nor will this ever be effected unless their* Wills *be conciliated to their work, and they duly* affected *both towards it, and towards all those things, that it is to be conversant about.*

III. *And as sure he was that neither* this *nor* that *would ever be, unless their* understandings *were enlightened, true representations made, and right and useful notions introduced, and they brought to a sound and steady judgment both of their work, and the nature, worth, and use of all, it is to be exercised in, or towards.*

A small share of common sense *and* experience *would enable him hence to collect, that it much, yea almost altogether depends on their education, what they shall be here, and where for ever hereafter, how they shall discharge themselves now, and how come off at judgment, what inward joy, or remorse; what assurance or diffidence of Conscience; what credit or dishonour they shall enjoy themselves; what comfort and honour their Parents, Masters, or Family; what help, benefit, and advantage the Church, or Commonwealth, the King or Country shall have of them; whether they shall prove the promoters of the welfare, or the disturbers of the peace of mankind. He was confident of the truth of that,* Train up a child in the way he should go, and when he is old he will not depart from it. *Nor could he think that any who were truly* trained *up in it, ever did depart from it; but then by* training up *he understood more, then now and then a little talk, even an actual regular and constant managing him under good discipline, and his direction by it.*

He had next consided the time in which all this necessary work is to be done, the shortness of its duration, the uncertainty of its continuance, and found that the whole was little enough, though never so well imployed, for our preparing

and

end fitting them for it, and their actual doing it; and that neither the Teacher, nor they had any to ſpend upon things impertinent, and unconducing to the main end, much leſs upon ſuch as might darken, ſeduce, debauch, or hinder them.

Hence (as you will eaſily think) be concluded that no skill, diligence or care in the conduct of ſuch creatures in all their procedures, could be too much; nor any wrong ſo fatally great and prejudicial as either to neglect them, or to miſemploy their faculties, deceive them with falſe and maimed notions, oppreſs their memories, or puzzle their heads with needleſs or noxious things, with intricate, inconſequent and irrational Theories, miſguide their choice, efferate or break their ſpirits, retard the generous impetus, *or divert it to unneceſſary or hurtful operations, but that he was bound by all obligations*

I. *To keep the glorious* end *always fixt in his own and his charges eye.*

II. *To ſearch out diligently, and uſe reſolutely the ſure* means *that would infallibly lead to, and gain the End.*

III. *To ſtudy and apply the readieſt, plaineſt, eaſieſt* ways *of ſo uſing thoſe meanes that the deſigned End might certainly be attained by all that refuſed not to follow them: Among which he reckoned* thoſe *to be very conſiderable ones,* viz.

1. *That in every thing needful to be* known, *a full and fair repreſentation be made of all the conſiderables in it, and all the notices to be had of it from Senſe, Reaſon, or credible Relation, that ſo by a clear light carried before him the Learner may be lead into true conceptions of the* nature, *but eſpecially of the* uſe *to be made of it toward gaining his* End.

2. *That in things to be propoſed to the* Will *the real worth of each, the advantage or damage ariſing from it, the good or bad in it, and the true uſefulneſs be propoſed to aſſiſt his right affecting it.*

3. *That in things to be done all be made practicable, matter and inſtruments prepared, imitable* examples *propoſed, true* directions *given,* practice *urged, and followed till an* habit *be introduced, and that that be never loſt.*

4. *That all that is to be taught be digeſted into ſuch* order, *that what is already known, or eaſieſt to be ſo, precede and make way for what is unknown; and by ſuch gradations that the gaining one ſtep be a riſe to the ſecond, and that to the third; for what is impoſſible immediately may become not only poſſible but eaſie upon doing that which gives light and help to it.*

5. *That all be in mutual ſubſerviency made to agree together, that ſo one notion or operation juſtle not, nor interfere with another.*

6. *That all be adapted and accommodated to the caſe, capacity, improvements and ſtanding of the Learner, that what is not ſuited to his ſtate he may never meddle with, what he is to learn, but cannot yet, be deferred.*

But I muſt not here prevent nor exſcribe his Book of Didacticks, *which I wiſh leiſure and encouragement would allow him to write out for the Preſs. I ſhall therefore confine my ſelf to the matter in hand.*

He then turned himſelf to conſider the Method commonly uſed in England, *and found it to be utterly uncapable of ſuiting his deſign, no end fairly propoſed, no means fit to ſerve one, the examples few and worthleſs, and often half ſentences,*

i. e.

i.e. *half sense, the Rules immethodical, obscure, fallacious, redundant, defective, irrational, contradictory, not only in* Latin, *but in* hobling, *and in many places barbarous verse. Vocabularies confused, and not suited to help apprehension or memory, the* English *Dictionaries notwithstanding all the pains of worthy Names, intolerable, seducing and deficient in necessaries, not distinguishing half the homonymous words, nor adjusting* Latin *to them. So that I have heard him say that he thought that great man said not much amiss that said,* If all the malicious fiends and men were met in consult, to contrive a way of learning of endless trouble to the Master, and vexatious useless toil to the Scholar, they could not have found out one that would be admitted to use, worse than that we have.

He had heard and read abundance of sad complaints and confessions of ingenious men both at home and abroad that our way was utterly wrong, and he had consulted all the Didactick *writings, and all the Grammars that pretend to mend the old, that could be got. The foreigners were not fitted to the* genius *of our Tongue, the* English *he found to be too much overborn by the prejudices of their Education to do any considerable good this way, only transcribing with the rest the grossest errors of their Authors, and accumulating new. Only Mr.* Lewis *and the* Westminster-*Grammar, seeing the utter incorrigibleness of* Lilly *went quite another way, but so unhappily that he thinks he can make it good* that there are in each of those three Grammars more gross errours than breaks.

Whence any one may easily give himself a satisfactory account why of so many thousands that spend many years at School, there are so few Scholars, and of so few Scholars why there are so many that are bunglers at every good work; and even in Latin, the great work of their lives, *hardly one* Milton *is found in an age.*

He had moreover his own experience for twenty years to inform him of the unpleasantness, difficulty, falsity and uselesness of the common way, and had observed that since our Grammar and Dictionaries were first made, abundance of useful inventions were come to light, and many mistakes rectified, which all our neighbours have the wit to serve themselves of, though we han't.

II. *These being the occasions of this new attempt, his design was to bring all useful learning fit for School-boys within the compass of those seven or eight years which are usually allowed for that purpose, so as that they might assuredly be masters of all: And keeping to the Rules aforesaid to make,*

For the first year a Book containing only the plain fundamentals of the art of speaking, and for matter the Primitive words, in some order to help both the judgment and memory, and fetcht over again in Sentences.

For the Second, a Book containing, 1. *A fuller Grammar;* 2. *A fuller Lexicon of Derivatives and Compounds drawn regularly down from their Primitives, with certain Rules of deducing and compounding words;* 3. *Some easie and useful pieces of good Authors, with needful notes and observations in* English *on all difficulties.*

For the Third year, 1. *A* Greek *Grammar, containing the plain grounds of that tongue, without Dialects or contractions,* &c. 2. *A Set of primitive Words and*

and Sentences made of them taken out of N. T. *and other good Authors, and then a full Grammar, and ſome eaſie Authors.*

For the Fourth year, 1. *A perfect Grammar,* Engliſh, Latin *and* Greek, *with all the Idioms, ways of variation of each tongue adjuſted, the compoſition of all ſorts of Sentences, Periods, Orations, Epiſtles,* &c. *the art of Verſifying, with examples and imitations of all.* 2. *A full and perfect Lexicon,* Engliſh *and* Latin, *with the Synonymas, Homonymys, Origine and allowed uſe and import of each word.* 3. *Authors.*

For the Fifth year, a Book of Engliſh, Roman *and* Greek *Formulas, Cuſtoms, Laws, Religion,* &c. *and all that is needful to the underſtanding of good Authors.* 2. *Art of Rhetorick and Oratory, Poetry,* &c.

The other three years to be ſpent in reading over ſuch Books, Engliſh, Latin, Greek *or* Hebrew, *as ſhall be put into their hands, and exſerping what is uſeful.*

III. *And this being deſigned, he being more intent upon ſome of the other, too haſtily caſt his crouding thoughts upon theſe papers, and upon the review ſees many things not anſwering the Idea of his mind, but whoever will take notice that he was all the while otherwiſe fully imployed, and took this for a by-work, that when diſtracted and tired he was fain by interrupted ſnatches to write it, and ſend it ſheet by ſheet to the Preſs, that he never ſaw two ſheets of it together before one of them was Printed, and ſo had no copy of the former ſheet but what was in his head, but eſpecially that for the ſake of ſome who were of years, who deſired to be taught this way, he hath added ſome things in the midſt and end, that are not ſo fit for beginners, will rather wonder there are no more faults in it; ſuch as are he hopes to amend if occaſion ſerve. In it he hath kept all words in their natural order, and uſed no* Ellipſes, *not ſo much as of* Ego *or* Tu, *till they come to underſtand why. why he has put the* Vocat. *next the* Nomin. *there was great reaſon, that ſo the courſe of the Oblique Caſes ſhould not be interrupted. why he bsgins in Verbs with the Infinite, and thence forms off the Finite, he that ſees not the manifeſt reaſon, and the great advantage of it, is not capable of being taught it by me.*

But as it is, I have by experience found that thoſe that have learned this Book as the ſheets came off the Preſs, have learned with all cheerfulneſs and pleaſure, ten times as much as in the ſame time they would have done the other way, and do well underſtand and can perform the operations readily.

IV. *As to the beſt way of uſing it, we have found thus:*

1. *That the Maſter read to the whole* form *as much as he thinks fit, and make each in their order read after him, marking long, ſhort, high, or low Syllables with his Pen, where he ſees need.*

2. *At the ſecond going over he is to explain it, and make them to underſtand it, and to anſwer all his queſtions within Book, encouraging any that will venture to anſwer any thing without Book.*

3. *At the third going over firſt we aſſure their underſtanding of it better, and require them to ſay it by heart, which then they will eaſily do, and keep what is learned in mind by daily repetition.*

4. *By that time they come to the Declenſions, it is neceſſary that they have learned*

ed to write, and thenceforward to write down all in a fair Paper-book to be kept by them, and shewn to their friends, this pleases and profits them greatly.

5. *If the Master please for the first year or two to make them pronounce the Letters* c, g, t, *&c. always with the same sound as the* Romans *did, and as is to be seen in the Table of Letters, it will prevent a thousand troubles in their Spelling, as well as their mistaking of one word for another, as* Servus *and* Cervus, &c.

☞ *What he* hath done *and is doing towards the informing their* judgments, *engaging their* hearts, *and assuring their* practise, *in the greater matters of* Religion, piety, good manners, dutifulness, subjection, beneficialness, *&c. I having no order here to mention, must leave it to his own season.*

Tottenham High-Cross,
Jan. 8. 1683.

Samuel Hoadly.

The written marks or Characters of each Letter are Great / Small } A B C D / a b c d e

The Great Characters are used in the begining

1 Of all proper names as John Dorothy London Brownell Edward West

2 Of all proper words of art as Grammar Rhetorick &c

3 Of all words of honour as King Father &c

4 Of all word especially to be noted as:

Tis Manners Makes the man
Quoth William of Wickham

5 Of every verse in a poem as—

Felix qui potuit boni fonten viscere Lucidum

6 Of every new full sentence

7 Throughout whole words where they are remarkable as—

1 In the Inscriptions of Books and in the Titles as

The EPISTLE of PAUL to Titus

2 In old Roman laws as—

3 In the inscriptions of Pillars Tombs Urns &c

AN Introduction Into Useful LEARNING.

CHAPTER I.

Concerning the Latin Letters.

Question 1. *How many are the* Latin *Letters?*

Answer The Latin Letters are two and twenty.

N. B. *The framing and pronouncing or sounding of the Letters aright exactly as the Latins did,* (*of which see the* Preface) *cannot be here represented, but must be sought from the mouth of an* Intelligent Teacher.

Here follow the Characters, or written Marks of each Letter, and their right Names, by which their true Power and Sound may be known.

I. Their Written Characters		II. Their Names
Great	Small	
A	a	A
B	b	Be
C	c	Ce *as* Ke *not* See
D	d	De
E	e	E
F	f	eF
G	g	Ge *as* Γγ *not* dzhee
H	h	He *not* Aitch
I J	i j	I *as* ee *not* I *ego*, *or* eye *oculus*
L	l	eL
M	m	eM
N	n	eN
O	o	O
P	p	Pe
Q	q	Cu
R	r	eR
S	ſ s	eS
T	t	Te
V U	u v	U *as* oo *not* you *or* yu *or* yew.
X	x	eX *or* aX
Y	y	Y *as* ὐ ψιλὸν
Z	z	Ze-ta

N. B. q *is not a ſingle Letter but was heretofore a written mark for two*, viz. cu *when* u *was Conſonant as* qis, qare, qod *for* cuis, cuare, cuod; *now we add the* u *to it*, quis, quare, quod.

N. B. x *is not a ſingle Letter, but is a written mark for two*, viz. cs *or* gs *as* dixi *for* dicſi, rex *for* regs, junxi *for* jungſi.

Qu. *How are theſe two and twenty Letters divided?*

2. *Anſ.* Of theſe Letters ſome are *Vowels*, and ſome are *Conſonants*.

Qu. *Which Letters are* Vowels?

3. *Anſ.* Theſe ſix, a, e, i, o, u, y, are called *Vowels*, becauſe each of them is a full and perfect ſound of it ſelf, without another Letter.

Q. *How many ways are theſe ſix* Vowels *to be pronounced?*

4. *Anſ.* Each *Vowel* is ſometimes pronounced *ſhort*, and ſometimes *long*, as,

1. *a* in { *far ban can lad* —— is ſhort. / *fare bane cane lade* —— is long.

2. *e*

2. *e* in	*bar-ren*	*bed*	*fa-ther*	—— ——	is ſhort.
	ſe-rene	*bede*	*there*	—— ——	is long.
3. *i* in	*trig*	*livt*	*whiff* *riven*	——	is ſhort
	in-trigue	*re-lieve*	*if* *re-triven*	——	is long.
4. *o* in	*rot*	*born*	*top* *rod*	—— ——	is ſhort.
	rote	*borne*	*tope* *rode*	——	is long.
5. *u* in	*plum*	*ſumm*	*tun*	——	is ſhort.
	plume	*præ-ſume*	*tune*	——	is long.
6. *y* in	*hy-po-crite*	——	——	——	is ſhort.
	ſtyle	——	——	——	is long.

Qu. *How may it be known when each Vowel is to be pronounced* ſhort, *and when* long?

5. *Anſ.* In this book, where it is needful the *ſhort* Vowel ſhall be marked thus (˘) as ŏs, nĕc, pĕr; the *long* thus (¯) as ōs, rōs.

Qu. *Which Letters are Conſonants?*

6. *Anſ.* The other ſixteen Letters are called *Conſonants*, becauſe they cannot be plainly pronounced by themſelves, but muſt be *ſounded with* a Vowel. Therefore when we name them ſingly, we put a *Vowel* to each of them.

Either *before* them, as in theſe ſeven, eF, eL, eM, eN, eR, eS, eX.

Or *after* them, as in theſe nine, Be, Ce, De, Ge, He, Pe, Cu, Te, Ze.

Qu. *Can none of theſe ſixteen be plainly and clearly ſounded without the help of a* Vowel?

7. *Anſ.* If any one try to pronounce any of the *Conſonants*, as Be, Ce, De, Cu, *&c.* without the *Vowel*, he will ſee that he cannot plainly ſound any of them.

Qu. *In theſe Letters following, ſay, which are Vowels, and which Conſonants?* e t l m i p q r u y s a b c o f g i h d n x.

Anſ. ——

CHAP. II.

Of a Syllable.

Q. *What is to be done with theſe Letters?*

8. *A.* The uſe of the Letters is to make *Syllables*.

Q. *How many Letters go to make a Syllable?*

9. *Anſ.* I. Sometimes *one Letter* makes a *Syllable*.

as, a, e, i, o, u, y.

10. II. Sometimes *Two Letters* go to the making of a *Syllable*, as,

ăb	ĕb	ĭb	ŏb	ŭb					
āb	ēb	īb	ōb	ūb	ba	be	bi	bo	bu
ac	ec	ic	oc	uc	ca	ce	ci	co	cu
ad	ed	id	od	ud	da	de	di	do	du
af	ef	if	of	uf	fa	fe	fi	fo	fu
ag	eg	ig	og	ug	ga	ge	gi	go	gu
ah	eh	ih	oh	uh	ha	he	hi	ho	hu
ai	ei		oi		ja	je	ji	jo	ju

N. B. *Inſtead of* ai *they write* æ, *and inſtead of* oi *they write* œ, *and in both pronounce only the* e, *ſo for* Muſai *and* Poina *they write* Muſæ *and* Pœna, *and pronounce* Muſe and Pena.

	al	el	il	ol	ul	la	le	li	lo	lu
	am	em	im	om	um	ma	me	mi	mo	mu
	an	en	in	on	un	na	ne	ni	no	nu
	ap	ep	ip	op	up	pa	pe	pi	po	pu
	ar	er	ir	or	ur	ra	re	ri	ro	ru
	as	es	is	os	us	ſa	ſe	ſi	ſo	ſu
	at	et	it	ot	ut	ta	te	ti	to	tu
	au	eu		ou		ua	ue	ui	uo	uu
as	aw	ew		ow		*as* wa	we	wi	wo	wu
	az	ez	iz	oz	uz	za	ze	zi	zo	zu

11. III. Sometimes *three Letters* go to make a *Syllable*, as,

băb	bĕb	bĭb	bŏb	bŭb	hei	joi	lui	mai	nei
bāb	bēb	bīb	bōb	būb	pai	rei	ſei	tai	uai
cab	deb	fib	gob	hub	zai	bel	cil	dol	ful
jab	leb	mib	nob	pub	gal	hel	jil	lol	mul
rab	ſeb	tib	uob	zub	nal	pel	ril	ſol	tul
bac	cec	dic	goc	huc	ual	zel	bim	dom	fum
jac	lec	mic	noc	puc	gam	hem	tim	ſom	zum
rac	ſec	tic	uoc	zuc	can	fen	hin	lon	nun
bad	ced	did	fod	gud	ran	ten	zim	bap	dep
had	jed	lid	mod	nud	gap	jep	mip	pop	ſup
pad	red	ſid	tod	uud	uap	cer	fir	hor	lur
zad	baf	cef	dif	fof	nar	rer	tir	zor	bus
guf	haf	jef	lif	mof	das	ges	jis	mos	pus
nuf	paf	ref	ſif	tof	ſas	ues	cit	fot	hut
zaf	bag	ceg	dig	fog	lat	net	rit	tot	zut
gug	hag	jeg	lig	mog	bau	deu	gou	lau	mou
nag	peg	rig	ſog	tug	pau	reu	tou	boz	duz
uag	zeg	bih	coh	duh	faz	hez	liz.	noz	ruz
fah	geh	hih	joh	luh	ſaz	zez			
mah	neh	pih	roh	ſuh	abd	ebd	ibs	obs	ubz
bai	cei	doi	fui	gai	acf	ecm	icn	ocp	uct

	acs	ecs	ics	ocs	ucs	arb	ert	ird	oſt	uſp
or	ax	ex	ix	ox	ux	ats	etz	jun	oul	uzd
	ads	eds	ifs	oft	uft	bda	ble	bri	blo	bru
	ags	egs	igs	ogs	ugs	cla	cre	cſi	dlo	dru
or	ax	ex	ix	ox	ux	fla	gre	pli	ſlo	clu
	ald	eic	oil	uin	uit	gra	gle	ſpi	tuo	
	alb	eld	ils	olt	ulm	ath	eth	thi	tho	thu
	amp	emf	imt	omb	umg	ach	ech	ich	och	uch
	and	ent	ins	ops	upt	cha	che	chi	cho	chu

12. IV. Some *Syllables* are made of *four Letters*, as, pars, barb, herd, ſoul, four, mons, daps, mors, flam, film, kiln, arts, horn, myrh, ſlab, ſtil, hymn, damn, ſlou, moſt, boil, maid, tray, hunc, pond, plat.

13. V. Some *Syllables* conſiſt of *five Letters*, as, ſlubs, ſcobs, ſtirr, ſtart, quail, merx, ſnort, might, night, blank, crank, world, wound.

14. VI. Sometimes *ſix Letters* go to make one *Syllable*, as, ſcrobs, ſtirps, mought ſought, caught, ſtrait, bright, taught.

15. VII. Sometimes *ſeven Letters* in Engliſh are put into one *Syllable*, as, ſtraits, weights, fraught.

16. VIII. Sometimes *eight*, as, ſtreight.

Q. *In theſe Syllables following, ſay, how many Letters in each?*

This is your work, that all your works be wrought well, as in the ſight of God, who is of ſo pure eyes, that he hates to ſee ſin.

17. *Anſ.* ——

CHAP. III.

Concerning Words.

Q. WHat *is to be done with the* Syllables?

18. *Anſ. Syllables* are uſed to make *words*.

Q. *How many Syllables go to make a* Word?

19. *Anſ.* I. Sometimes *one* Syllable makes a *word*, as, man, hat, mors, death, fons, fount, mons, mount, pons, bridge.

20. II. Sometimes *Two* Syllables go to make a *word*, as, wo-man, mas-ter, ma-ter, mo-ther, pa-ter, fa-ther, fra-ter, bro-ther, wiſ-dom, good-neſs.

21. III. Sometimes *Three*, as, pu-ri-tas, pu-ri-ty, pi-e-tas, pi-e-ty, ſo-ber-neſs, mer-ci-ful.

22. IV. Some *words* are made of *Four* Syllables, as, ſo-bri-e-tas, ſo-bri-e-ty, cor-rec-ti-o, cor-rec-ti-on, ad-op-ti-on, cha-ri-ta-ble, per-ſpi-cu-us, per-ſpi-cu-ous.

23. V. Some of *Five*, as. Sup-po-ſi-ti-on, per-ſpi-cu-i-ty, per-pe-tu-i-ty, un-con-quer-a-ble, com-mu-ni-cat-ed.

24. VI. Sometimes *Six* Syllables are in one *word*, as, pu-ri-fi-ca-ti-on, ſanc ti-fi ca-ti-on, Juſ-ti-fi-ca-ti-on, *&c.*

Q. *In theſe words following, tell me, how many Syllables are there?* God ſo lov-ed the World, that he ſent his one-ly be-got-ten Son in-to it, that who-ſo-e-ver be-liev-ed in him, ſhould not per-iſh, but ſhould have e-ver-laſt-ing life.

25. *Anſ.* ——

Q. *What are* Words *uſed for?*

26 *A.* Men uſe Words to expreſs, and declare the *thoughts* of their mind, when they ſpeak: for we often need to declare and ſignifie our thoughts to others, and they cannot know our thoughts but by our ſpeech.

Q. *What then is our Speech made up of?*

27. *A.* When we ſpeak, to expreſs our minds to others, our Speech is made up of Words, and therefore Words are called *Parts of Speech.*

Of the Eight Parts of Speech, or, *Of the Eight Sorts of Words.*

Q. IN *Speech how many* Parts *are there?*

An. 28. In Speech be theſe *Eight Parts* following.

1. *A Noun.*
2. *A Pronoun.*
3. *A Verb.*
4. *A Participle.*
5. *An Adverb.*
6. *A Conjunction.*
7. *A Præpoſition.*
8. *An Interjection.*

Q. *What do you mean when you ſay,* there are Eight Parts of Speech?

29. *A.* I mean that there are *Eight Sorts of Words,* which men uſe, when they ſpeak; for ſome Words are *Nouns,* ſome are *Pronouns,* ſome are *Verbs,* others are *Participles,* others are *Adverbs,* others are *Conjunctions,* others *Præpoſitions,* and others are *Interjections.*

Q. *Are there no more Sorts of* Words *uſed in ſpeaking?*

30. *A.* There are no other kinds of Words uſed, for every Word which men uſe in ſpeaking is either a *Noun,* or a *Pronoun,* or a *Verb,* or a *Participle,* or *&c.*

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Concerning a Noun.

Q. *WHat is a* Noun?

31. *A.* A *Noun* is the name of a thing, which may be ſeen, felt, heard or underſtood, as,

The Name of * *THIS* Thing in Engliſh is	*An Hand*	And in Latin the name of it is	Manus.
	An Houſe		Domus.
	A Man		Homo.
	Good		Bonus.
* *The thing is here to be ſhewn.*	*Fair*		Pulcher.
	Happy		Fœlix.

Q. *What words then are* Nouns?

32. *A.* All theſe Words are *Nouns* which are the names of things.

Q. *How many* Kinds *of* Nouns *are there?*

33. *A.* There are *two* Sorts of *Nouns*, for of Nouns ſome be *Subſtantives*, and ſome be *Adjectives.*

Q. *What is a* Noun Subſtantive?

34. *A.* A *Noun Subſtantive* is that Name of a Thing, which can ſtand by its ſelf in a *ſaying*, and requireth not an *Adjective* to be joyned with it, to make ſenſe, as,

A Man,	Homo.	*An Houſe*,	Domus.
A Maſter,	Magiſter.	*A Parent*,	Parens.
An Hand,	Manus.	*A Boy*,	Puer.

Q. *In theſe ſayings*, I ſee a man, he ſhewes an Hand, you hear the Maſter, we build an Houſe, *is there need of an* Adjective *to be added, to make ſenſe?*

35. *A.* No, For I underſtand the meaning of them, as they are.

Q. *What is a Noun* Adjective?

36. *An.* A *Noun Adjective* is that *Name* of a Thing, which cannot ſtand by its ſelf in a ſaying, but requireth a *Subſtantive* to be joyned with it, to make ſenſe, as,

Good,	Bonus.	*Happy*,	Fœlix.	*wiſe*,	Sapiens.
Fair,	Pulcher.	*Light*,	Levis.	*Great*,	Magnus.

Q. *In theſe ſayings*, I ſee a Good, He hath a Fair, Give me a Great, Teach a Wiſe; *do theſe Words* Good, Fair, Great, Wiſe *need any other Word to be put to them to make ſenſe?*

37. *Anſ.* Yes, a Good *Man*, a Fair *Face*, a Great *Apple*, a Wiſe *Child.*

Qu. *In these sayings following, which words are* Substantives, *and which are* Adjectives, *and why?*

The *Master* sent a *Boy*.
Thou writest a *Good*.
A *wise* learns his *Book*.
The *Carpenter* builds a *Great*.
That is a *Sober*.
See that *Horse*.
You wear a *Blew*.
The *Master* sent a *Letter*.

38. *An.* ——

CHAP. V.

Exemples of the most usual Nouns Substantive.

		Decl.	Gen.
39. Every			
Thing hath *a Name*,	R-ēs Nom-ĕn	ĕi ĭnis	f. n.
40. A Thing is,			
GOD,	DE-US	i	m.
The World,	Mund-us	i	m.
and its Parts,	Par-s	tis	f.
41. Without the World is,			
Nothing	Nihĭl-um	i	n.
42. The Greater Parts of the World are,			
Heaven,	Cœl-um	i	n.
The Skie,	Æth-ēr	ĕris	m.
The Air,	A-ēr	ĕris	m
The Water,	Aqu-a	æ	f.
The Earth,	Ter-ra	æ	f.
Hell,	Oro-us	i	m
43. Things herein are,			
A Spirit,	Spirĭt-us	ūs	m.
A Body,	Corp-us	ŏris	n.
A Man,	Hom-o	ĭnis	m.
44. A Spirit is,			
An Angel,	Angĕl-us	i	m.
A Devil,	Diabŏl-us	i	m.
A Soul,	Anĭm-a	æ	f.
45. Bodies in the Skie are,			
The Sun,	Sōl-	is	m.
The Moon,	Lun-a		
A Star,	Stell-a		
46. From which come			
Light,	Lū-x	cis	f.
Heat,	Cal-ŏr	ōris	m.
Fire,	Ign-is	is	m.
47. When Light is withdrawn there is,			
A Shadow,	Umbr-a		
A Dusk,	Calīg-o	ĭnis	f.
Darkness,	Tenĕbr-æ	ārum	f.
48. When Heat is gone there is,			
Cold,	Frig-us	ŏris	n.
49. A Fire is,			
A Spark,	Scintill-a		
A Flame,	Flamm-a		
Lightning,	Fulgŭr-	is	n.
50. By Fire are made			
A Fire-brand,	Torr-is	is	m.
A Live-coal,	Prun-a		
Embers,	Favill-a		

51. After

51. After Fire remain

A dead brand,	Titi-o	ō-nis	m.
A dead coal,	Carb-o	ō-nis	m.
Aſhes,	Cinĭs		
or	Cinĕr-	is	m.

52. In the Air is,

A Steam,	Vap-ŏr	ōris	m.
A winde,	Vent-us	i	m.
Thunder,	Fulm-ĕn	ĭnis	n.

53. A Vapour is,

A Smoke,	Fum-us	i	m.
A Miſt,	Nebŭl-a		
A Cloud,	Nub-ēs	ĭs	f.

54. Wind is,

A Breath,	Spirĭt-us	ūs	m.
A Gale,	Aur-a		
A whirl-wind,	Turb-o	ĭnis	m.

55. Water is,

A Drop,	Gutt-a		
A Spring,	Fon-s	tis	m.
A Stream,	Fluvi-us	i	m.
A River,	Riv-us	i	m.
or	Amn-is	is	m
A Lake.	Lac-ŭs	ūs	m.
A Sea,	Mar-e	is	n.
An Ocean,	Océăn-us	i	m.

56. In a great Water is,

A Smoothneſs,	Æquŏr-	is	n.
A wave,	Und-a		
A whirl-pool,	Gurg-ĕs	ĭtis	m.

57. Of Water is made,

A Bubble,	Bull-a		
Foam,	Spum-a		
Dew,	Rō-s	ris	m.
Rain,	Pluvĭ a		
Ice,	Gláci-ēs	ēi	f.
Snow,	Nĭ-x	vis	f.
Hail,	Grand-o	ĭnis	f.

58. Earth is,

Duſt,	Pulvis		
or	Púlvĕr-	is	m.
Dirt,	Cœn-um		
Mud,	Lim-us	i	m.
Clay,	Lut-um		
Chalk,	Cret-a		

59. Earth by the Water is,

A Brink,	Marg-o	inis	m.
A Bank,	Rip-a		
A Shore,	Lit-ŭs	ŏris	n.

60. Upon the Earth is,

A Plain field,	Camp-us	i	m.
A Vale or *Vally,*	Vall-is	is	f.
An Hill,	Coll-is	is	m.
A Mount or *-ain,*	Mon-s	tis	m.

61. Bodies ariſing from the Earth are,

A Mineral,	Minĕr-a		
A Plant,	Plant-a		
or	Stirp-s	is	f.
A Live creature,	Anim-ăl	ālis	n.

62. A Mineral is,

A concrete Juice,	Succ-us	i	m.
A Metal,	Metall-um		
A Stone,	Lapĭ-s	dis	m.

63. A Concretion is,

Salt,	Sal-	is	m.
Alum,	Alūm-en	ĭnis	n.
Brimſtone,	Sulfŭr-	is	n.

64. Metal is,

Lead,	Plumb-um		
Iron,	Ferr-um		
Copper,	Æ-s	ris	n.
Tin,	Stann-um		
Silver,	Argent-um		
Gold,	Aur-um		

65. A

65. A Stone is,

Sand,	Arēn-a		
Gravel,	Glare-a		
A Pebble,	Scrup-us	i	m.
A big Stone,	Sax-um		
A Crag,	Rup-es	is	f.
A Rock,	Scopŭl-us	i	m.
A Marble,	Marmŏr-	is	n.
A Flint,	Sil-ex	ĭcis	d.
A Load-Stone,	Magnē-s	tis	m.
A Pumice,	Pum-ex	ĭcis	d.
A Chrystal,	Chrystall-us	i	f.
A Jewel,	Gemm-a.		

66. A Jewel is,

A Diamant,	Adăma-s	ntis	m
A Saphire,	Sapphīr-us	i	f.
A Ruby,	Rubīn-us	i	f.

67. Stones made by Art are,

A Brick,	Latĕr-	is	m.
A Tile,	Tegŭl-a		
Glass,	Vitr-um		

68. A Plant is,

An Herb,	Herb-a		
A Shrub,	Frut-ex	ĭcis	m.
A Tree,	Arbŏr-	is	f

69. An Herb is,

Grass,	Gram-ĕn	ĭnis	n.
Garden herb,	Ol-ŭs	ĕris	n
Corn,	Frū-x	gis	f.

70. A Garden Herb is,

Lettuce,	Lactūc-a		
Cumin.	Cumīn-um		
A Cucumber,	Cucŭmĕr-	is	m.
A Melon,	Mel-o	ōnis	m.
Poppy,	Papāvĕr-	is	n.
Anise,	Anīs-um		
Sage,	Salvi-a		
Mint,	Menth-a		
Thyme,	Thym-us	i	m.
A Parsnep,	Sisĕr-	is	n.
A Turnep,	Rap-um		
An Onion,	Cep-a		

71. Corn is,

A Bean,	Fab-a		
A Pea,	Pis-um		
Oats,	Avēn-a		
Barly,	Horde-um		
Rie,	Secāl-e	is	n.
Wheat,	Tritĭc-um		

72. In which are,

The Stalk,	Caul-is	is	m.
The Ear,	Spic-a		
The Grain,	Gran-um		

73. A Shrub is

A Cane	Cann-a		
A Reed,	Calăm-us	i	m.
or	Arund-o	ĭnis	f.
A Bramble,	Rub-us	i	m.
A Rose-bush,	Ros-a		
A Vine,	Vit-is	is	f.
Ivy,	Hedĕr-a		
An Hazel,	Coryl-us	i	f.

74. A Tree is,

An Apple-Tree,	Māl-us	i	f.
A Pear-Tree,	Pyr-us	i	f.
A Fig-Tree,	Fic-ŭs	ūs	f.
A Cornelian,	Corn-us	i	f.
A Lawrel,	Laur-us	i	f.
A Box-Tree,	Bux-us	i	f.
A Cedar,	Cedr-us	i	f.
A Cypress,	Cupress-us	i	f.
An Oak,	Querc-ŭs	ūs	f.
A Poplar,	Pōpŭl-us	i	f.
A Willow,	Sali-x	cis	f.

75. In Plants are,

The Root,	Radī-x	cis	f.
The Stock,	Trunc-us	i	m.
A Branch,	Ram-us	i	m.

76. In

76. In the **Trunk** is,

The Rinde,	Cort-ex	ĭcis	m.
The Pith,	Medull-a		
The wood,	Lign-um		

77. In a **Bough** is,

A Leafy Twig,	Fron-s	dis	f.
A Leaf,	Foli-um		
A Bloſſom,	Flō-s	ris	m.
The Fruit,	Fruct-ŭs	ūs	m.

78. **Fruit** is,

A Pome,	Pom-um		
A Nut,	Nŭ-x	cis	f.
A Berry.	Bacc-a		

79. A **Pome** is,

An Apple,	Māl-um		
A Pear,	Pyr-um		
A Plum,	Prun-um		
A cherry,	Cerăſ-um		
A Fig,	Fic-us	ūs	f.

80. A **Nut** is,

A Fillberd,	Avellān-a		
A Wall-nut,	Juglan-s	dis	f.
A Cheſtnut,	Caſtane-a		

81. A **Berry** is,

A Mulberry,	Mor-um		
An Olive,	Olīv-a		
A Straw-berry,	Fragſ-um		

82. A **Live Body** is,

An Inſect,	Inſect-um		
A Worm,	Verm-is	ĭs	m.
A Serpent,	Serpen-s	tis	m.
A Fiſh,	Piſc-is	is	m.
A Bird,	Av-is	is	f.
A Beaſt,	Beſti-a		

83. An **Inſect** is,

A Louſe,	Pedicŭl-us	ī	m.
A Flea,	Pul-ex	ĭcis	m.
A Spider,	Arane-a		

84. Winged **Inſects** are,

A Gnat,	Cul-ex	ĭcis	m.
A Flie,	Muſc-a		
A Bee,	Ap-is	is	f.
A Waſp,	Veſp-a		
A Locuſt,	Locuſt-a		

85. A **Worm** is,

A Groundworm,	Lumbrīc-us	ī	m.
A Leech,	Hirūd-o	ĭnis	f.
A Silk-worm,	Bomby-x	cis	m.
A Snail,	Limā-x	cis	d.

86. **Serpents** are,

A Snake,	Angu-is	is	m.
A Dragon,	Drac-o	ōnis	m.
A Viper,	Vipĕr-a		

87. In which there is,

Poiſon or *Venom,* Venēn-um

88. **Fiſhes** are,

An Oiſter,	Oſtre-a		
A whale,	Balæn-a		
An Herring,	Halēc-	is	f.
A Tench,	Tinc-a		
A Perch,	Perc-a		
A Carp,	Carpi-o		
A Trout,	Trutt-a		
A Salmon,	Salm-o	ōnis	m.
A Sole,	Sole-a		
An Eel,	Anguill-a		
A Mullet,	Mull-us	ī	m.

89. In ſome **Fiſhes** are,

A Scale,	Squam-a		
A Fin,	Pinn-a		
The Gills,	Branchi-æ	ārum	f.

90. Houſe **Fowls** are,

A Cock,	Gall-us	ī	m.
An Hen,	Gallīn-a		
A Capon,	Cap-o	ōnis	m.
A Gooſe,	Anſĕr-	is	m.

A Duck

A Duck,	Ană-s	tis	d.
A Pea-cock,	Pav-o	ōnis	m.
A Pigeon,	Columb-us	i	m.

91. Birds about the Houſe are,

A Sparrow,	Paſſer-	is	m.
A Swallow,	Hirund-o	ĭnis	f.
A Tit,	Par-us	i	m.
A R. Red-breaſt,	Rubēcŭl-a		

92. Field-Birds are,

A Lark,	Alaud-a		
A Partridge,	Perdī-x	cis	d.
A Crane,	Gr-ūs	ŭis	d.

93. Birds of the Wood,

A Wood-cock,	Gallinăg-o	ĭnis	f.
A Pheaſant,	Phaſiān-us	i	m.
A Black-bird,	Merŭl-a		
A Turtle,	Turtŭr-	is	m.

94. Birds of Prey are,

An Eagle,	Aquĭl-a		
A Kite,	Milv-us	i	m.
An Hawk,	Accipit-er	ris	m.

95. A Singing-Bird Oſc-en ĭnis m. is,

A Nightingal,	Luſcini-a		
A Linet,	Linari-a		
A Chaffinch,	Fringill-a		

96. A Night-Bird, Noctua.

An Owl,	Bub-o	ōnis	m.
An Howlet,	Ulŭl-a		
A Bat,	Veſpertili-o	ōnis	m.

97. To Birds belong,

A wing,	Al-a		
A Feather,	Plum-a		
A Quil,	Penn-a		
A Bill,	Roſtr-um		
A Tail,	Caud-a		
A neſt,	Nid-us	i	m.
An Egg,	Ov-um		

98. Four footed Beaſts are,

Houſe Beaſts,		ŭdis	f.
Tame Cattle,	Pec-ŭs	ŏris	n.
Wild Beaſts,	Fer-a		

99. Houſe Beaſts are.

A Dog,	Can-is	is	m. & f.
A Cat,	Cat-us	i	m.
or	Fel-is	is	f.

100. Cattle are,

A Bullock,	B-ōs	ŏvis	m. & f.
A Bull,	Taur-us	i	m.
A Cow,	Vacc-a		
A Calf,	Vitŭl-us	i	m.
A Sheep,	Ov-is	is	f.
A Ram,	Ari-ēs	ĕtis	m.
An Hee-Lamb,	Agn-us	i	m.
A She-Lamb,	Agn-a		
A Swine,	S-ūs	ŭis	m. & f.
An Hog,	Porc-us	i	m.
A Sow,	Porc-a		
An Horſe,	Equ-us	i	m.
A Mare,	Equ-a		
An Hee-Aſs,	Asĭn-us	i	m.
A Shee-Aſs,	Asĭn-a		
An Hee-Mule,	Mul-us	i	m.
A Shee-Mule,	Mul-a		
A Camel,	Camēl-us	i	m.
An Elephant,	Elĕphā-s	ntis	m.

101. Wild-Beaſts are,

A Stag or Hart,	Cerv-us	i	m.
An Hind,	Cerv-a		
A Buck or Doe,	Dam-a		
An Hare,	Lep-us	ŏris	m.
A Coney,	Cunicŭl-us	i	m.
An Ape,	Simi-a		
A Mole,	Talp-a		
A Mouſe,	Mū-s	ris	m.
A Lion,	Le-o	ōnis	m.
A Lioneſs,	Le-a		
An Hee-Bear,	Urſ-us	i	m.
A She-Bear,	Urſ-a		
A Wolf,	Lup-us	i	m.

A Shee-

A Shee-Wolf,	Lup-a		
A Fox,	Vulp-es	is	f.

102. On Beaſts is either,

Hair,	Pil-us	i	m.
Wool,	Lan-a		
or *Briſtles,*	Set-a		

103. In Man beſides his

Body,	Corp-ŭs	ŏris	n.

And ſenſitive

Soul,	Anĭm-a		

there is alſo,

A Mind,	Men-s	tis	f.

104. The Parts of a Living Body, eſpecially of Mans are,

The Head,	Cap-ŭt	ĭtis	n.
The Trunk,	Trunc-us	i	m.
The Limbs,	Art-ŭs	ūs	m.

105. In all which Parts are,

Skin,	Cut-is	is	f.
Fleſh,	Car-o	nis	f.
Bone,	ŏs-	ſis	n.
An Humor,	Hum-ŏr	oris	m.

106. In the Head are,

The Crown,	Vert-ĕx	ĭcis	m.
The Hair,	Capill-us	i	m.
The Face,	Faci-es	ēi	f.

107. In the Face are,

The Fore-head,	Fron-s	tis	f.
The Eye,	Ocŭl-us	i	m.
The Noſe,	Naſ-us	i	m.
The outer Cheek,	Gen-a		
An Ear,	Aur-is	is	f.
The Mouth,	ō-s	ris	n.
The Lip,	Labi-um		
The Chin,	Ment-um		
The Beard,	Barb-a		

108. In the Eye are,

The Apple,	Pupill-a		
The Eyelids,	Palpĕbr-æ	ārum	f.

109. In the Mouth are,

The Palate or Roof,	Palāt-um		
The Inner Cheek,	Bucc-a		
The Tongue,	Lingu-a		
The Gum,	Gingīv-a		
A Chap,	Fau-x	cis	f.

110. Between the Head and Trunk are,

The Neck,	Coll-um		
The Throat,	Guttŭr-	is	n.
The Crag,	Cervī-x	cis	f.

111. In the Trunk of the Body are,

The Fore part,			
The Back part,	Terg-um		
The ſide,	Lat-us	ĕris	n.

112. In the Fore-ſide are,

The Breaſt,	Pect-us	ŏris	n.
The Belly	Vent-ĕr	ris	m.
The Groin	Ingu-ĕn	ĭnis	n.

113. In the Backſide are,

A Shoulder,	Humĕr-us	i	m.
The Mid-Back,	Dorſ-um		
The Buttocks,	Nat-es	ium	f.

114. The Limbs are,

The Hand,	Man-ŭs	ūs	f.
The Foot,	P-ēs	ĕdis	m.

115. The Parts of the Hand are,

An Arm,	Brachi-um		
The Elbow,	Cubĭt-ŭs	i	m.
The Fiſt,	Pugn-us	i	m.

The

The Palm,	Palm-a		
A Finger,	Digĭt-us	i	m.
The Thumb,	Poll-ĕx	ĭcis	m.

116. In a **Finger** are,

A Joint,	Articŭl-us	i	m.
A Knuckle,	Condyl-us	i	m.
A Nail,	Ungu-is	is	m.

117. Parts of the **Foot** are,

The Thigh,	Fem-ūr	ŏris	n.
The Knee,	Gen-u	u	n.
The Ham,	Popl-ĕs	ĭtis	m.
The Leg,	Crū-s	ris	n.
The Shank,	Tibĭ-a		
The Calf,	Sur-a		
The Ancle.	Tal-us	i	m.
The Foot below the Ancle,	Plant-a		

118. In the **Plant** of the **Foot** is,

The Heel,	Cal-x	cis	f.
The Sole,	Sol-um		
A Toe,	Digĭt-us	i	m.

119. The **Bones** of the **Head** are.

The Skull, or *Brain-pan,*	Calv-a Crani-um		
The Cheek-Bone,	Mal-a		
The Jaw-bone,	Maxill-a		
A Tooth,	Den-s	tis	m.
	And in some Beasts		
A Horn,	Corn-u	u	n.

120. In the **Brain-pan** is,

The Brain.	Cerĕbr-um		

121. The **Bones** of the Trunk are,

The Breast-bone,	Stern-um		
The Back-bone,	Spin-a		
A Rib.	Cost-a		

122. **Fleshy Parts** are,

A Muscule,	Muscŭl-us	i	m.
An Inward,	Visc-us	ĕris	n.
A Pipe,	Canāl-is	is	m.

123. The **Inwards** are,

The Heart,	Cor-	dis	n.
The Lungs,	Pulm-o	ōnis	m.
The Liver,	Jec-ur	ŏris	n.
The Paunch,	Ventricŭl-us	i	m.
The Reins or kidny,	Ren-	is	m.
The Bladder,	Vesic-a		

124. The **Pipes** are,

The Gullet,	Gul-a		
The Guts,	Ili-a	ium	n.
A Vein,	Ven-a		

125. **Humors** are,

Blood,	Sangu-is *or* en	ĭnis	m.
Phlegm,	Pituīt-a		
Choler,	Cholĕr-a		
Milk,	Lac-	tis	n.
Gall,	Fel-	lis	n.

126. Excrementitious **Humors** cast forth are,

Sweat,	Sud-ŏr	ōris	m.
Spittle,	Saliv-a		
Snot,	Muc-us	i	m.
Matter,	Pū-s	ris	n.
Piss,	Urīn-a		

127. In the **Sensitive Soul** are,

Appetite,	Appetīt-us	ūs	m.
Hunger,	Fam-ēs	is	f.
Thirst,	Sit-is	is	f.

128. In the **Spirit** or **Mind** are,

The Understanding,	Intellect-us	ūs	m.
The Will,	Voluntā-s	tis	f.
The Mind or the Active Power,	Anĭm-us	i	m.

129. In

129. In the **Understanding** is,

Wit,	Ingeni-um		
Reason,	Rati-o	ōnis	f.
Judgment,	Judici-um		
Memory,	Memori-a		

130. The **Will** hath its

Affections,	Affect-us	ūs	m.
Love,	Am-ŏr	ōris	m.
Hate,	Odi-um		
Joy,	Gaudi-um		
Sorrow	Mær-ŏr	ōris	m.
Hope,	Spē-s	ĕi	f.
Fear,	Tim-ŏr / Met-ŭs	ōris / ūs	m. m.
Favour,	Fav-ŏr	ōris	m.
Scorn,	Fastidi-um		
Desire,	Desideri-um		
Lust,	Cupīd-o	ĭnis	f.
Neglect,	Neglect-us	us	m.
Anger,	Ir-a		
Zeal,	Zel-us	i	m.

131. In these **Animals** are,

Life,	Vit-a		
Sense,	Sens-ŭs	ūs	m.
Sex,	Sex-ŭs	ūs	m.

132. The **Senses** are five,

Seeing,	Vis-ŭs	ūs	m.
Hearing,	Audit-ŭs	ūs	m.
Touching,	Tact-ŭs	ūs	m.
Tasting,	Gust-ŭs	ūs	m.
Smelling, &c	Odorāt-us	us	m.

133. By the **Senses** are perceived,

Colour,	Col-ŏr	ōris	m.
Sound,	Son-us	i	m.
A Touchable,	Tactīl-e	is	n.
Savour or relish,	Sap-ŏr	ōris	m.
A Smell,	Od-ŏr	ōris	m.

134. And hence come

Pleasure,	Voluptā-s	tis	f.
Grief or Pain,	Dol-ŏr	ōris	m

135. By its **Sex** an Animal is

A Male,	Mā-s	ris	m.
A Female,	Fœmĭn-a		

136. A **Female** hath

A Womb,	Uter-us	i	m.
A Dug or Breast,	Uber-	is	n.
A Teat or Nipple,	Papill-a		

137. A **Defect** in the **Body** is

A Slash or Gash,	Plag-a		
A Wound,	Vuln-ŭs	ĕris	n.
A Disease,	Morb-us	i	m.

138. **Diseases** are,

A Cough,	Tuss-is	is	f.
An Ague or Fever,	Febr-is	is	f.
The Dropsie,	Hydrōp-s	is	m.

139. **Catching** Diseases are,

The Itch or Scab,	Scabi-ēs	ēi	f.
The Leprosie,	Lepr-a		
The Plague,	Pest-is	is	f.

140. A Man by **Excess** or **Defect** in his stature is,

A Giant,	Gigā-s	ntis	m.
A Dwarf,	Pumili-o	ōnis	m.
A Monster,	Monstr-um		

141. **Defects** in the **Sensitive Soul** are,

Death,	Mor-s	tis	f.
Dulness,	Torp-ŏr	ōris	m.
Sloth,	Desidi-a		

142. **Defects** in the **Spirit** are,

Ignorance,	Ignorānti-a		

Vice,	Viti-um		
unskilfulness,	Imperiti-a		

143. Vice is,

A Fault,	Culp-a		
A Sin,	Peccāt-um		
A Crime,	Crim-ĕn	ĭnis	n.
A Villany,	Scel-ŭs	ĕris	n.

144. The Perfection of the Spirit is

Knowledg,	Scienti-a		
Virtue,	Virtū-s	tis	f.
Skill,	Periti-a		
Grace,	Grati-a		
Art,	Ar-s	tis	f.
Wisedom,	Sapienti-a		

145. The Proper Names of Men are,

Adam,	Adām-us	i
Abraham,	Abrahām-us	i
Anthony,	Antoni-us	i
Benjamin,	Benjamīn-us	i
Charles,	Carŏl-us	i
Christopher,	Christophŏr-us	i
Daniel,	Danĭel-	is
David,	David-	is
Edmund,	Edmund-us	i
Edward,	Edvard-us	i
Francis,	Franciſc-us	i
George,	Georgi-us	i
Gilbert,	Gilbert-us	i
Henry,	Henrīc-us	i
James,	Jacŏb-us	i
John,	Joann-es	is
Luke,	Luc-as	æ
Mark,	Marc-us	i
Matthew,	Matthæ-us	i
Nathaniel,	Nathanĕēl-	is
Paul,	Paul-us	i
Peter,	Petr-us	i
Richard,	Richard-us	i
Robert,	Robert-us	i
Samuel,	Samuēl-	is
Thomas,	Thom-as	æ
William,	Uilhelm-us	i
or	Guilielm-us	i

146. The Proper Names of Women are,

Alice,	Alici-a	
Amy,	Amāt-a	
Anne,	Ann-a	
Barbara,	Barbăr-a	
Catharine,	Catharīn-a	
Dorothy,	Dorothe-a	
Elizabeth,	Elizabēth-a	
or *Betty,*	*or* Elīza	
Eve,	Ev-a	
Frances,	Franciſc-a	
Grace,	Chariſſ-a	
Hannah,	Hann-a	
Helen or Nell,	Helĕn-a	
Jane,	Jan-a	
Joan,	Joann-a	
Lucy,	Luci-a	
Margaret,	Margarīt-a	
Martha,	Marth-a	
Mary,	Mari-a	
Rachel,	Rachēl-	is
Rebecca,	Rebecc-a	
Sarah,	Sar-a	
Susan,	Suſann-a	
Thomasin,	Thomasīn-a	

147. Man must be

1. Maintained,
2. Imployed,
3. Associated.

148. For Mans Maintenance are,

Riches,	Diviti-æ	ārum	f.
An Habitation,	Habitacŭl-um		
Furniture,	Apparāt-us	ūs	m.
Carriages,	Vehicŭl-um		
Food,	Aliment-um		
Rayment,	Veſtīt-ŭs	ūs	m.
Arms,	Arm-a Plur.	ōrum	n.

Recreation

Recreation, Recreati-o -ōnis f.

149. **Riches** or **Wealth** are,

Mony,	Numm-us	i	m.
or	Pecuni-a		
Land,	Ag-er	ri	m.
Stock,	Peculi-um		

150. **Money** is,

A Farthing,	Quadran-s	tis	m.
A Peny,	Denari-us	i	m.
A Shilling,	Solid-us	i	m.
or	As-	ſis	m.

151. **Land** is,

Tilled Land,	Arv-um		
Meadow,	Prat-um		
A Garden,	Hort-us	i	m.
An Orchard,	Pomari-um		

152. **Habitations** are,

A Cave,	Antr-um		
A Cottage,	Caſ-a		
An Houſe,	Dom-us	ūs	f.
A Tent,	Tentori-um		
A Palace,	Palati-um		
A Caſtle,	Caſtell-um		
or	Ar-x	cis	f.

153. **Out-Houſes** are,

A Bath,	Balne-um
A Stable,	Stabŭl-um
A Privy,	Forĭc-a
A Barn,	Horre-um
A Sty,	Har-a
A Mill,	Mol-a

154. In an **Houſe** are,

The Foundation,	Fundament-um		
The Wall,	Pari-ēs	ĕtis	m.
The Rooms,	Æd-es Plur.	ĭum	f.
The Roof,	Tect-um		

155. **Rooms** in an **Houſe** are,

The Cellar,	Cell-a		
The Kitchin,	Culīn-a		
The Battery,	Penuari-a		
The Hall,	Aul-a		
The Parlour,	Conclāv-e	is	n.
A Chamber,	Camĕr-a		
A Bed-Chamber,	Cubicŭl-um		
A Study,	Muſæ-um		

156. To an **Houſe** belong

A Court-Yard,	-rĕ-a		
A Gate,	Janŭ-a		
A Door,	Oſti-um		
A Window,	Feneſtr-a		
A Stair,	Grad-ŭs	ūs	m.
or *Ladder,*	Scal-a		
A Tour,	Turr-is	is	f.

157. To a **Door** belongs

A Poſt,	Poſt-is	is	m.
An Hinge,	Card-o	ĭnis	d.
A Bar,	Vect-is	is	m.
A Bolt,	Peſsŭl-um		
A Lock,	Ser-a		
A Key,	Clav-is	is	f.

158. **Furniture** is,

A Tool,	Inſtrument-um		
A Veſſel,	Vas-	is	n.
Houſhold-ſtuff,	Supelle-x	ĕctilis	f.

159. A **Tool** or **Inſtrument** is,

A Knife,	Cult-er	ri	m.
An Ax,	Aſci-a		
A Saw,	Serr-a		
A Hammer,	Tud-ĕs	ĭtis	m.
A Mallet,	Malle-us	i	m.

160. A Vessel is,

An Hogs-head,	Doli-um			
A Barrel,	Cad-us	i	m.	
A Basket,	Corb-is	is	m.	
A Kettle,	Lebē-s	tis	m.	
A Pot or *Pipkin,*	Oll-a			
A Pot (to drink in)	Pocŭl-um			

161. Houshold-stuff in the Kitchen

A Spit,	Ver-u	u	u.
A Mortar,	Mortari-um		
A Pestle,	Pistill-um		
A Bowle,	Scop-a		
A Fire-shovel,	Batill-um		
A pair of Tongs	Forc-eps	ĭpis	m.
A pair of Bellows,	Foll-is	is	m.

162. In the Hall,

A Seat,	Sed-es	is	f.
A Table,	Mensa		

163. A Seat is,

A Chair,	Cathĕdr-a		
A Stool,	Sell-a		
A Bench,	Scamn-um		

164. To a Table belong

A Carpet,	Tapē-s	tis	m.
A Table-cloth,	Mapp-a		
A Napkin,	Manteli-um		

165. In the Nursery are

A Dish,	Disc-us	i	m.
A Plate round,	Orb-is	is	m.
A Trencher square,	Quad-ra		
A Spoon,	Cochlear-e	is	n.
A Salt-cellar,	Salīn-um		

166. In the Chamber are,

A Looking-glass,	Specŭl-um		
A Chamber-pot,	Matŭl-a		
A Bed,	Lect-us	i	m

167. A Company of Houses together are,

A Village,	Vill-a		
A Town,	Oppĭd-um		
or *a City,*	or Urb-s	is	f.

168. Carriages are,

A Cart,	Carr-us	i	m.
A Waggon,	Plaustr-um		
A Coach,	Curr-ŭs	ūs	m.

169. To which belong

A Pole,	Tem-o	ōnis	m.
An Axel-tree,	Ax-is	is	m.
A Wheel,	Rot-a		

170. Furniture for Carriage-Beasts,

A Yoke,	Jug-um		
A Saddle,	Sell-a		
A Bridle,	Frœn-um		

171. Food is,

Meat,	Cib-us	i	m.
Drink,	Pot-us	ūs	m.

172. Meat is,

Bread,	Pan-is	is	m.
Honey,	Mel-	lis	n.
Butter,	Butyr-um		
Cheese,	Case-us	i	m.

173. Drink is,

Beer or *Ale,*	Cervisi-a		
Mead,	Mul'sum		
Wine,	Vin-um		

174. A Meal is,

A Break-fast,	Jentacŭ-lum		
A Dinner,	Prandi-um		
A common Supper,	Cœn-a		

175. Cloathing

175. Cloathing is,

An Hat,	Galĕr-us	i	m.
A Cap,	Pile-us	i	m.
A Peruke,	Caliendr-um		
A Neck-Cloth,	Collār-e	is	n.
A Shoo,	Calce-us	i	m.
A Boot,	Ocre-a		
A Spur,	Calc ăr	āris	n.
A Garment,	Veſt-is	is	f.

176. A Garment is,

A Shirt,	Induſi-um
A Waſt-coat,	Subucŭl-a
A pair of breeches,	Bracc-a
A Coat,	Tunĭc-a
A Cloak,	Palli-um
A Gown,	Tog-a

177. Arms are,

A Weapon,	Tel-um		
A Sword,	Enſ-is	is	m.
or	Gladi-us	i	m.
A Bow,	Arc-ŭs	ūs	m.
An Arrow,	Arund-o	ĭnis	f.
A Gun,	Sclop-us	i	m.

178. Armour is,

An Head-piece,	Gale-a
A Mail-Coat,	Lorīc-a
A Buckler or Shield,	Scut-um

179. Recreation is,

Play,	Lud-us	i	m.
or Sport,	Luſ-us	us	m.
Joke,	Joc-us	i	m.

180. Inſtruments of Play are,

A Die,	Ale-a		
A Card,	Chart-a		
A Bowl,	Glob-us	i	m.
A Marble or Nicker,	Globŭl-us	i	m.
A Ball,	Pil-a		
A Bat,	Eacŭl-us	i	m.

181. Thus Man is Maintained in.

Health,	Salū-s	tis	f.
Strength,	Rob-ur	ŏris	n.
and *Briſkneſs,*	Vig-or	ōris	m.

182. That Man be Maintained he muſt be Imployed in

Care,	Cur-a		
Study,	Studi-um		
Toil or Labour,	Lab-or	ōris	m.
Buſineſs, Act &	Negoti-um		
Duty,	Offici-um		
Religion,	Religi-o		

183. Buſineſs is to be done without

Delay,	Mor-a		
Hinderance, Impediment,	Impediment-um		
Deceit,	Dol-us	i	m.
Fraud,	Frau-s	dis	f.

184. When Buſineſs is over, there is

Leiſure,	Oti-um		
Reſt or *quiet,*	Quiē-s	tis	f.

185. A Man by his Imployment, is

A Teacher,	Doct-or	ōris	m.
A Scrivener,	Scrib-a		m.
Phyſician,	Medĭc-us		m.
A Poet,	Poet-a	æ	m.
A Muſician,	Muſĭc-us	i	m.
Merchant,	Mercāt-ŏr	ōris	m.
A Mariner,	Navĭt-a		m.
or *Sea-man,*	Naut-a		m.
An Herdſman,	Paſt-ŏr	ōris	m.

An Hunts-man,	Venāt-ŏr	ōris	ūm.
An Handy-Crafts-man,	Opĭf-ex	ĭcis	f.

186. From a Poet is

A Verse,	Vers-ŭs	ūs	m.
A Song,	Carm-ĕn	ĭnis	n.
	or Mus-a		
A Poem,	Poēm-a	ătis	n.

187. The Musicions Instruments are,

A Drum,	Tympăn-um		
A Pipe,	Tibi-a		
A Whistle,	Fistŭl-a		
A Trumpet,	Tub a		
An Organ,	Orgăn-um		
A Cittern,	Cithăr-a		
An Harp,	Lyr-a		
A Fiddle,	Fid-es	is	f.

188. With a Merchant is

Ware,	Mer-x	cis	f.
Price,	Preti-um		
Gain,	Lucr-um		
Loss,	Damn-um		

189. To a Mariner belongs

A Boat,	Cymb-a		
A Skiff,	Scaph-a		
A Ship,	Nav-is	is	f.

190. Parts of a Ship are

The Fore-ship,	Pror-a		
The Hind-ship,	Pupp-is	is	f.
The Hull or *hold,*	Alvĕ-us	i	m.

191. To a Ship belong

A Mast,	Mal-us	i	m.
A Sail,	Vel-um		
A Rope,	Fun-is	is	m.
A Cable,	Ruden-s	tis	m.
An Anchor,	Anchŏr-a		
An Oar,	Rem-us	i	m
A Pole,	Cont-us	i	m.

192. With an Herds-man are,

An Herd,	Arment-um		
A Flock,	Grĕ x	gis	m.
A Crook,	Ped-um		
A Pouch,	Per-a		

193. With an Hunter is,

A Hay-net,	Cass-is	is	m.

194. An Handy-Crafts-man is

An Husband-man,	Agricŏl-a		m.
A Clothier,	Pannĭf ex	ĭcis	m.
A Baker,	Pist-or,	ōris	m.
A Brewer,	Cerevisiari-us	i	m.
A Chandler,	Candelari-us	i	m.
A Spinster,	Netrī-x	cis	f.
A Taylor,	Sart-ŏr	ōris	m.
A Miller,	Molĭt-ŏr	ōris	m.
A Shoe-maker,	Sut-ŏr.	ōris	m.
A Painter,	Pict-or	oris	m.
A Wright, / *A Smith,*	Fab-er	ri	m.
A Gold-Smith,	Aurĭf-ĕx	ĭcis	m.
A Cooper,	Viē tor	ŏris	m.
A Surgeon, or *Chirurgeon,*	Chirurg-us	i	m.
A Cook,	Coqu-us	i	m.
A Butcher,	Lani-us	i	m.
A Fisher-man,	Piscāt-or	ōris	m.
A Fowler,	Auc-eps	ŭpis	m.
A Barber,	Tons-or	ōris	m.
A Gardiner,	Hortulān-us	i	m.

195. With an Husband-man is,

A Plow,	Aratr-um		
A Rake,	Rastr-um		
A Fork,	Furc-a		
A Sithe or *Sickle,*	Secŭl-a		

An

An Hook,	Fal-x	cis	f.
A Fan,	Vann-us	i	f.

196. After **Ploughing** is,

A Furrow,	Sulc-us	i	m.
A Crop ſtanding,	Segĕ-s	tis	f.
Harveſt,	Meſſ is	is	f.

197. With a **Clothier** is,

Cloth,	Pann-us	i	m.

and in it

A Plight,	Plic-a

198. With a **Baker** is,

A Sieve,	Cribr-um
A Kneading-Trough, *A Bach*,	Mactr-a / Maſſ-a

199. With a **Brewer** is,

Malt,	Byn-e	es	f.
Hops,	Lupŭl-us	i	m.
Wort,	Muſt-um		

200. With a **Chand'ler** is

Tallow,	Seb-um
Wax,	Cer-a
A Candle,	Candēl-a

201. With a **Spinſter** is,

A wheel,	Girgill-us	i	m.
A Diſtaff,	Col-us	i	f.
A Spindle,	Fuſ us	i	m.
Flax,	Lin-um		
Hemp,	Cannăb-is	is	f.
A Thread,	Fil-um		

202. With a **Taylor** is,

A pair of Shears,	Forf-ex	ĭcis	m.
A Needle,	Ac-us	ūs	f.
A Thimble,	Digitā-le	is	n.

203. With a **Miller** is,

A Sack,	Sacc-us	i	m.
Flowr,	Farīn-a		
Bran,	Furfŭr-	is	m.

204. With a **Shoe-maker** is,

Leather,	Cori-um		
An Awl,	Subŭl-a		
A Laſt,	Modŭl-us	i	m.

205. With a **Painter** is,

Paint,	Pigment-um		
A Pencil,	Penicill-us	i	m.
A Picture,	Pictūr-a		
or *Image*,	Imāg-o	ĭnis	f.

206. With a **Wright** is,

A Plank,	Planc-a
A Board,	Tabŭl-a
An Augre,	Terĕbr-a

207. With a **Smith** is,

An Anvil,	Incū-s	dis	f.
A File,	Lim-a		
A Flake,	Lamĭn-a		

208. With a **Gold-ſmith** is,

A Ring,	Annŭl-us	i	m.
A Chain,	Torqu-es	is	m.
A Neck-Lace,	Monil-e	is	n.

209. With a **Cooper** is,

An Hoop,	Circŭl-us	i	m.

210. With a **Cook** is,

Meat,	Opſoni-um		
Broth or *Juice*,	Jū-s	ris	n.
Pepper,	Pipĕr-	is	n.
Sugar,	Sacchăr-um		
Vinegar,	Acēt-um		

211. With a **Fiſher** is,

A Hook,	Ham-us	i	m.
Line,	Line-a		

Rod or *Cane*,	Arund-o	ĭnis	f.
A Bait,	Eſc-a		
A Net,	Ret-e	is	n.

212. With a Fowler are,

A Springe, or *Gin*,	Laque-us	i	m.
Bird-lime,	Viſc-ŭs	i	m.
A Cage,	Cave-a		
or *Coop*,	Cor-s	tis	f.

213. With a Barber is

A Comb,	Pect-en	ĭnis	m.
A Razor,	Novacŭl-a		
Soape,	Sap-o	ōnis	m.

214. With a Maſon is,

A Rule,	Norm-a		
A Chalk line,	Amuſſ-is	is	f.
A pair of Compaſſes,	Circĭn-us	i	m.

215. With a Gardiner is,

A Spade,	Lig-o	ōnis	m.
A Shovel,	Pal-a		

216. So Each Man hath his

Work,	Op-us	ĕris	n.
Wages,	Mercē-s	dis	f.
or *Reward*,	Præmi-um		

217. The Reward of good Works is,

Fame,	Fam-a		
Praiſe,	Lau-s	dis	f.
Honour,	Hon-or	ōris	m.
Glory,	Glori-a		
Credit,	Dec-us	ŏris	n.

218. The Reward of evil doing is,

Diſgraſſe,	Virup ri-um		
Diſgrace,	Dedĕc-us	ŏris	n.
Puniſhment,	Pœn-a		

219. Puniſhment is,

A Fine,	Mulct-a		
A Stripe,	Verbĕr-	is	n.
Death,	Ne-x	cis	f.

220. Places of Puniſhment are,

A Priſon,	Carcĕr-	is	m.
The Gallows	Patibŭl-um		
A Croſs,	Crŭ-x	cis	f.

221. The Works of Religion are,

Faith,	Fid-es	ĕi	f.
Hope,	Sp-es	ĕi	f.
Charity,	Charĭtā-s	tis	f.
Faſting,	Jejuni-um		
Prayers,	Prec-es Plur.	um	f.
Alms,	Eleemoſyn-a		

222. That Men may be Maintained and Employed well, they muſt be Aſſociated.

223. Men are Aſſociated in,

Marriage,	Matrimoni-um		
A Family,	Famili-a		
A Corporation,	Civitā-s	tis	f.
A Kingdom,	Regn-um		
A Common-wealth,	Reſpublĭc-a		
A School,	Schol-a		
A Church,	Eccleſi-a		

224. By Marriage are,

A Husband,	Marĭt-us	i	m.
A Wife,	Ux-ŏr	ōris	f.
A Father,	Pat-ĕr	ris	m.
A Mother,	Mat-er	ris	f.
A Son,	Fili-us	i	m.
A Daughter,	Fili-a		
A Brother,	Frat-er	ris	m.

A Siſter,	Sor-ŏr	ōris	f.
A Grand-Father,	Av-us	i	m.
A Grand-Mother,	Avi-a		
A Grand-Child,	Nepō-s	tis	c.

225. In a **Family** are,

A Maſter,	Her-us	i	m.
A Miſtris,	Her-a		
The Lord,	Domĭn-us	i	m.
The Dame or Lady,	Domĭn-a		
A Servitor,	Miniſt-er	ri	m.
A Man-ſervant,	Serv-us	i	m.
A Maid-ſervant,	Serv-a		

226. **Men** in a **Corporation** are,

A Citizen,	Civ-is	is	c.
A Forreigner,	Advĕn-a		m.
A Magiſtrate,	Magiſtrat-ūs	ūs	m.
A Companion,	Soci-us	i	m.

227. **Places** in a **City** are,

A Publick meeting place,	For-um		
A Market,	Mercāt-us	us	m.
A Street,	Plate-a		

228. **Men** in a **Kingdome** are,

The King,	Rē-x	gis	m.
The Queen,	Regīn-a		
The Subjects,	Subdĭt-i	Plur.orum	n.
or *People,*	Popŭl-us	i	m.

229. The **King** hath,

A Throne,	Thron-us	i	m.
A Scepter,	Sceptr-um		
A Crown,	Corōn-a		

230. The **Subjects** are,

The Nobles,	Procĕr-es	um	m.
The Commonalty,	Pleb-s	bis	f.
The Rabble,	Vulg-us	i	m.&n.

231. The **Nobles** are,

A Prince,	Princ-eps	ĭpis	m.
A Judge,	Jud-ex	ĭcis	m.
A Duke,	Dŭ-x	cis	m.
An Earl,	Com-ĕs	ĭtis	m.
A Knight,	Equ-ĕs	ĭtis	m.

232. The **Judge** muſt judge by

A Law,	Lē-x	gis	f.

233. Before the **Judge** are,

The Accuſed,	Re-us	i	m.
The witneſs,	Teſt-is	is	c.

234. The **Accuſed** is

A Thief,	Fūr-	is.	c.
A Robber,	Latr-o	ōnis	m.
A Murderer,	Homicīd-a		m.
An Adulterer,	Adultĕr-	i	m.
A Whore,	Merĕtrī-x	cis	f.
A witch,	Sag-a		

235. Whoſe **Crimes** are,

Theft,	Furt-um		
Robbery,	Latrocinĭ-um		
Murder,	Homicidi-um		
Adultery,	Adulteri-um		
whoredome,	Fornicati-o	ōnis	f.
witch-Craft,	Venefici-um		

236. In a **School** is,

The Maſter,	Præcept-ŏr	ōris	m.
The uſher,	Hypodidaſcal-us	i	m.
A Scholar,	Diſcipŭl-us	i	m.
Diſcipline,	Diſciplīn-a		

237. **Diſcipline** is by

A Rule,	Regŭl-a		
or *Precept,*	Præcept-um		
An Example,	Exempl-um		
Exerciſe,	Exercīti-um		

238. In Exerciſes are,

A Fault.	Mend-um		
An Amendment,	Correcti-o	ōnis	f.
Correction,	Correpti-o	ōnis	f.

239. Utenſils in a School,

A Deſk,	Abăc-us	i	m.
A Pen-knife, ſeal	Scalpell-um	*pere.*	
A Pen of a Quill	Penn-a		
A Pen of a Reed,	Calăm-us	i	m.
Ink,	Atrament-um		
Paper,	Papyr-us	i	m.
or	Chart-a		
A Ruler, hamus	Lineāl-e	is	n.
A Book,	Lib-er	rĭ	m.

240. In a Book are,

A Leaf,	Foli um
A Page,	Pagĭn-a
The writing,	Scriptūr-a

241. In the Writing is,

A Letter,	Litĕr-a		
A Syllable,	Syl ăb-a		
A Word,	Vo-x	cis	f
or	Verb-um		
A Phraſe,	Dicti-o	ōnis	f.
A Sentence,	Sententi-a		
A Speech,	Orati-o	ōnis	f.
or	Serm-o	ōnis	m.

242. A Speech is,

A Fable,	Fabŭl-a
An Hiſtory,	Hiſtori-a
A Letter, or *Epiſtle,*	Epiſtŏl-a

243. In the Church are,

The Head,	Cap-ut	itis	n.
The Miniſter,	Miniſt-er	ri	m.
One of the People,	Laic-us	i	m.

244. The Head is,

Jeſus,	Jeſ-us	u	m
Chriſt,	Chriſt-us	i	m.

245. The Miniſters are,

An Apoſtle,	Apoſtŏl-us	i	m.
A Biſhop,	Epiſcŏp-us	i	m.
A Prieſt or Elder,	Preſbytĕr-	i	m.
A Deacon,	Diacŏn-us	i	m.

246. The Place where the Church meets is,

A Temple, or *Church,*	Templum,

247. In the Church is,

A Pulpit,	Suggeſt-um		
A Deſk,	Pulpĭt-um		
A Bible,	Bibl-ia Plur.	orum	n.

248. In a Heathen Temple is,

A Prieſt,	Sacerdō-s	tis	m.
An Altar,	Altār-e	is	n.
An Idol,	Idōl-um		

249. In theſe Societies are,

A Friend,	Amīc-us	i	m.
An Enemy,	Inimīc-us	i	m.
Agreement,	Concordi-a		
Diſagreement,	Diſcordi-a		

250. In Concord is,

Peace,	Pa-x	cis	f.
Plenty,	Copi a		
A Treaſure,	Theſaur-us	i	m.

251. In Peace is,

Favour, kindneſs,	Grati-a		
A League,	Fœd-us	ĕris	n.
Aid or Help,	Auxili-um		

252. In Diſcord are,

A Quarrel,	Rix-a		
Threats,	Min-æ Plur.	arum	f.
War,	Bell-um		

253. In

253. In War is,

Tumult,	Tumult-us	ūs	m.
Danger,	Pericŭl-um		
Want,	Penuri-a		
A Fight,	Pugn-a		

254. To War are needful,

A Souldier,	Mil-ĕs	ĭtis	m.
An Army,	Exercĭt-us	ūs	m.
A General,	Imperāt-ŏr	ōris	m.
Pay,	Stip-s	is	f.

255. In a Fight are,

A Cry,	Clam-ŏr	ōris	m.
Flight,	Fug-a		
Victory,	Victori-a		

226. After the Victory is,

Spoil,	Spoli-um		
A Prey,	Præd-a		
A Triumph,	Triumph-us	i	m.

257. Of these Things are to be Considered,

The Cause,	Caus-a		
The Author,	Auct-or	ōris	m.
The Manner,	Mod-us	i	m.
Time,	Temp-ŭs	ŏris	n.
Place,	Loc-us	i	m.
Situation,	Sit-us	us	m.
Number,	Numĕr-us	i	m.
Weight,	Pond-ŭs	ĕris	n.
Measure,	Mensūr-a		
Order,	Ord-o	ĭnis	m. f.
Kind,	Gen-us	ĕris	n.
Motion,	Mot-us	ūs	m.

258. The Causes of things are,

The Efficient,	Efficien-s	tis	m.
The Matter,	Materi-a		
The Form,	Form-a		
The End,	Fin-is	is	m.

259. The Efficient under God are,

Nature,	Natūr-a		
Art,	Ar-s	tis	f.
Chance,	Cas-us	ūs	m.

260. To Chance belong,

Hap,	For-s	tis	f.
Fortune,	Fortūn-a		

261. To Form belong,

A Fashion,	Mō-s	ris	m.
The Figure, or Shape,	Figūr-a		

262. Time is,

A Minute,	Moment-um		
An Hour,	Hor-a		
A Day,	Die-s	ēi	m. & f.
A Week,	Hebdŏmă-s	dis	f.
A Month,	Mens-is	is	m.
A Year,	Ann-us	i	m.
An Age, 1. 100 years,	Sæcul-um		
2. Any part of Life,	Ætā-s	tis	f.

263. A Man by his Age is,

An Infant,	Infan-s	tis	c.
A Boy,	Puĕr-	i	m.
A Girl,	Puell-a		
A Young-Man, or Woman,	Juvĕn-is	is	c.
A Grown-man,	Vir-	i	m.
A Grown-Woman,	Muliĕr-	is	f.
An Old Person,	Sen-ex	is	c.
An Old-Woman,	Anu-s	ūs	f.

264. In a Day is,

The Day-Break,	Aurōr-a		
The Morning,	Man-e		
Noon,	Meridĭ-es	ēi	m.
Evening,	Vespĕr-	is	m.
The Night,	No-x	ctis	f.

265. In a Year are,

The Spring,	Vēr-	is	n.
The Summer,	Æstā-s	tis	f.

The

The Fall,	Autumn-us	i	m.
The Winter,	Hiĕm-s	is	f.

266. A Place of Travelling is.

A way,	Vi-a		
A Path,	Call is	is	m.

267. In a Way is,

A Passenger,	Viāt-ōr	ōris	m.
An Horseman,	Equ-ĕs	ĭtis	m.
A Foot-man,	Ped-ĕs	ĭtis	m.

268. With a Traveller is,

A Guide,	Dū-x	cis	m.
A Fellow-Traveller,	Com-ĕs	ĭtis	c.
A Purse,	Crumēn-a		

And before him

A Journey,	It-er	ĭnĕris	n.

269. Greater Places are,

A Country,	Regĭ-o	ōnis	f.
A County,	Comitāt-us	ūs	m.
An Island,	Insŭl-a		

270. Proper Names of Countries are,

England,	Angli-a		
Scotland,	Scoti-a		
Ireland,	Hiberni-a		
France,	Galli-a		
Spain,	Hispani-a		
Italy,	Itali-a		
Holland,	Hollandi-a		
Germany,	Germani-a		
Greece,	Græci-a		
Judea,	Judæ-a		
Ægypt,	Ægypt-us	i	f.

271. In which the Cheif Towns are,

London,	Londĭn-um		
Edinburgh,	Edinburg-um		
Dublin,	Dublini-um		
Paris,	Parisi-i Plur. orum		m.
Rome,	Rom-a		
Amsterdam,	Amstelodām-um		
Jerusalem,	Hierusalem		

272. An Iland is begirt with the Sea, such is,

Creet,	Cret-a		
Britain,	Britanni-a		
Cyprus,	Cypr-us	i	f.

273. In Place is,

Space,	Spati-um		
Distance,	Distanti-a		
A Bound.	Lim-ĕs	ĭtis	m.

274. A Bound is,

A Dike, or Ditch,	Foss-a		
An Hedge,	Sep-es	is	f.
A Wall,	Vall-um		

275. Measure of Space is,

An Inch,	Poll-ex	ĭcis	m.
A Foot,	P-ēs	ĕdis	m.
A Cubit,	Cubĭt-us	i	m.
An Ell,	Uln-a		
A Mile,	Miliār-e	is	n.

276. Measure of Weight is.

A Dram,	Drachm-a		
An Ounce,	Unci-a		
A Pound,	Libr-a Pondo		

277. Measures of Capacity are,

A Quart,	Quart-a		
A Gallon,	Congi-us	i	m.
A Bushel,	Modi-us	i	m.

278. In Order is,

The Beginning,	Principi-um		
The Middle,	Medi um		
The End,	Fin-is	is	m.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of Nouns Adjective.

Qu. THus you have learned the moſt uſed *Nouns Subſtantive*; *what is next to be done?*

279. *Anſ. Nouns Adjective* are next to be learned, which cannot ſtand alone in a *ſaying*, but muſt be joyned to a *Subſtantive*.

N. B. *Therefore here are ſet down the Subſtantives again, and to them are added their Adjectives.*

The moſt uſual Nouns Adjective.

280. Of any **Thing** it may be asked,

	m.	f.	n.
What kind of thing is it? } Qual-is	is	e.	
How big? Quant-us	a	um.	
Of what Number, or Order? } Quŏt-us			

281. The Anſwer is, A **Thing** is,

Such,	Tal-is
So Big,	Tant-us
Of ſuch Order,	Tŏt-us

282. A **Thing** when compared to another is,

Various,	Varĭ-us
Like,	Simĭl-is
or *unlike,*	Diſſimĭl-is
Diverſe,	Diverſ-us
or *Contrary,*	Contrarĭ-us

283. In regard to another a **Thing** is,

Good,	Bon-us
or *Bad,*	Mal-us
uſefull, profitable,	Utĭl-is
or *uſeleſs,*	Inutĭl-is
or *Vain,*	Van-us
or *Hurtful,*	Noxĭ-us

284. A **Good** thing is,

Grateful,	Grat-us
Pleaſant,	Jucund-us
Dear,	Char-us

285. A **Bad** thing is,

unacceptable,	Ingrāt-us
Troubleſome,	Moleſt-us
Hateful,	Invīſ-us

286. **God** is,

Everlaſting, Eternal, Ætern-us

The World

Temporary, Temporarĭ-us

287. A

287. A Body is,

Mortal,	Mortāl-is
A Spirit *Immortal*,	Immortāl-is

288. Heaven is,

High,	Alt us
Hell is *Deep*,	Profund-us

289. The Weather is,

Foul, ſtabby,	Ud-us
or *Fair*,	Sud-us

290. The Air is,

Clear,	Serēn-us
or *Cloudy*,	Nubīl-us

291. Rain is,

Thick,	Denſ-us
	or Spiſſ-us
or *Thin*,	Rar-us

292. Water is,

Clear,	Limpĭd-us
or *Foul*,	Turbĭd-us

293. The Earth is,

Dry,	Sicc-us
or *Moiſt*,	Humĭd-us

294. The Light is,

Clear, Bright,	Clar-us
or *Dull, obſcure*,	Obſcūr-us

295. A Field is,

Fruitful,	Fertĭl-is
or *Barren*,	Steril-is

296. Metal is,

Pure,	Pur-us
or *Droſſy*,	Impūr-us

297. A Plant is,

Tender,	Tenĕr-	a	um
or *Strong*,	Robuſt-us		
Green,	Virĭd-is		
or *Dry, withered*,	Arĭd-us,		

298. A Stalk is,

Solid,	Solĭd-us
or *Hollow*,	Cav-us
Firm,	Firm-us
or *weak*,	Debĭl-is

299. A Tree is,

High, Tall,	Procēr-us
or *Low*,	Humĭl-is

300. A Bough is,

Stiff,	Rigĭd-us
or *Lith, Limber*,	Lent-us
or *Brittle*,	Fragĭl-is

301. Fruit is,

Ripe-ripe,	Præcō-cis	x	x	x
or *Late-ripe*,	Serotĭn-us			
Ripe,	Matūr-us			
or *unripe*,	Immatūr-us			
Freſh, new-gathered,	Recen-tis	s	s	
Shrivel'd,	Vĭēt-us			
or *Rotten*,	Putr-is			

302. A Nut is,

Full,	Plen-us
or *Empty*,	Inān-is

303. An Animal is,

Alive,	Viv-us
or *Dead*,	Mortŭ-us

304. A Live-Creature is

Brutiſh,	Brut-us
or *Reaſonable*,	Rationāl-is

And

And each is,

Sound, San-us
or *Sick*, Ægrōt-us
Fat, Pingu-is
or *Lean*, Mac-er ra rum

305. A Fruit is,

Tame, Cicur- id. id.
is
or *wild*, Fer-us

306. An Animal is born,

Naked, Nud-us
Single, one at once, Singŭl-us
or *Twins*, Gemĭn-us

307. A Perſon is,

Handſome, Formōſ-us
or *ugly*, Deform-is
Noble, Nobĭl-is
or *Baſe, mean*, Ignobil-is

308. The Skin is,

Sleek, Smooth, Glab-er ra rum
or *Hairy, briſtly*, Hirsūt-us

309. The Hairs of the Head are,

Friz'led, Criſp-us
Red, Ruf-us
or *Grey, hoary*, Can-us

310. An Head without Hair is

Bald, Calv-us

311. The Countenance is,

Chearfull, Hilăr-is
or *Sorrowful*, Mœſt-us
Blith, Kind, Hland-us
or *Scrow*, Torv-us
or *Sower, ſurly*, Tetrĭc-us

312. The Belly is,

Slender, Gracĭl-is
or *Purſie*, Obēſ-us

313. The Stomach is,

Sharp-ſet, Avĭd-us
or *Dull*, Segn-is
Hungry, Jejūn-us
or *Full*, Satŭr- a um

314. The Voice is,

Shrill, or *Loud* Sonōr-us
Shrill, or *Sharp*, Acūt-us
or *Hoarſe*, Rauc-us

315. Affection is,

Moderate, Len-is
or *Strong*, Vehĕmen-s
tis

316. An Underſtanding Man is,

Learned, Doct-us
wiſe, Sapĭen-s
Prudent, Pruden-s
tis
Skilful, Perīt-us

317. A Man by his Powers is,

Able, Strenŭ-us
Courageous, ſtout, Fort-is
Active, Ready, Gnav-us

318 A Man by reaſon of Defects in his Body is,

Blind, Cæcu-s
Lame, Claud-us
or *Maimed*, Mutĭl-us

319. By Exceſs he is,

Huge, Monſtrous, Immān-is

320. By

287. A Body is,

Mortal,	Mortāl-is
A Spirit *Immortal*,	Immortāl-is

288. Heaven is,

High,	Alt-us
Hell is *Deep*,	Profund-us

289. The Weather is,

Foul, ſtabby,	Ud-us
or *Fair*,	Sud-us

290. The Air is,

Clear,	Serēn-us
or *Cloudy*,	Nubĭl-us

291. Rain is,

Thick,	Denſ-us
	or Spiſſ-us
or *Thin*,	Rar-us

292. Water is,

Clear,	Limpĭd-us
or *Foul*,	Turbĭd-us

293. The Earth is,

Dry,	Sicc-us
or *Moiſt*,	Humĭd-us

294. The Light is,

Clear, Bright,	Clar-us
or *Dull, obſcure*,	Obſcūr-us

295. A Field is,

Fruitful,	Fertĭl-is
or *Barren*,	Steril-is

296. Metal is,

Pure,	Pur-us
or *Droſſy*,	Impūr-us

297. A Plant is,

Tender,	Tenĕr-		a	un
or *Strong*,	Robuſt-us			
Green,	Virĭd-is			
or *Dry, withered*,	Arĭd-us,			

298. A Stalk is,

Solid,	Solĭd-us
or *Hollow*,	Cav-us
Firm,	Firm-us
or *weak*,	Debĭl-is

299. A Tree is,

High, Tall,	Procēr-us
or *Low*,	Humĭl-is

300. A Bough is,

Stiff,	Rigĭd-us
or *Lith, Limber*,	Lent-us
or *Brittle*,	Fragĭl-is

301. Fruit is,

Ripe,	Præcō-x		x	x
		cis	cis	cis
or *Late-ripe*-	Serotĭn-us			
Ripe,	Matūr-us			
or *unripe*,	Immatūr-us			
Freſh, new-gathered,	Recen-	s	s	
		tis		
Shrivel'd,	Viĕt-us			
or *Rotten*,	Putr-is			

302. A Nut is,

Full,	Plen-us
or *Empty*,	Inān-is

303. An Animal is,

Alive,	Viv-us
or *Dead*,	Mortŭ-us

304. A Live-Creature is

Brutiſh,	Brut-us
or *Reaſonable*,	Rationāl-is

And

And each is,

Sound,	San-us
or *Sick*,	Ægrōt-us
Fat,	Pingu-is
or *Lean*,	Mac-er ra rum

305. A Beast is,

Tame,	Cicur- id. id. is
or *Wild*,	Fer-us

306. An Animal is born,

Naked,	Nud-us
Single, one at once,	Singŭl-us
or *Twins*,	Gemĭn-us

307. A Person is,

Handsome,	Formōs-us
or *ugly*,	Deform-is
Noble,	Nobĭl-is
or *Base, mean*,	Ignobil-is

308. The Skin is,

Sleek, Smooth,	Glab-er ra rum
or *Hairy, bristly*,	Hirsūt-us

309. The Hairs of the Head are,

Frizled,	Crisp-us
Red,	Rus-us
or *Grey, hoary*,	Can-us

310. An Head without Hair is

Bald,	Calv-us

311. The Countenance is,

Chearfull,	Hilăr-is
or *Sorrowful*,	Mœst-us
Blith, Kind,	Bland-us
or *Scrow*,	Torv-us
or *Sower, surly*,	Tetrĭc-us

312. The Belly is,

Slender,	Gracĭl-is
or *Pursie*,	Obēs-us

313. The Stomach is,

Sharp-set,	Avĭd-us
or *Dull*,	Segn-is
Hungry,	Jejūn-us
or *Full*,	Satŭr- a um

314. The Voice is,

Shrill, or *Loud*	Sonōr-us
Shrill, or *Sharp*,	Acūt-us
or *Hoarse*,	Rauc-us

315. Affection is,

Moderate,	Len-is
or *Strong*,	Vehĕmen-s tis

316. An Understanding Man is,

Learned,	Doct-us
Wise,	Sapĭen-s
Prudent,	Pruden-s tis
Skilful,	Perīt-us

317. A Man by his Powers is,

Able,	Strenŭ-us
Courageous, stout,	Fort-is
Active, Ready,	Gnav-us

318 A Man by reason of Defect in his Body is,

Blind,	Cæcu-s
Lame,	Claud-us
or *Maimed*,	Mutĭl-us

319. By Excess he is,

Huge, Monstrous,	Immān-is

320. By

320. By **Defects** in his **Soul** he is,

Dull,	Hebĕ-s	s s
	tis	
Lazy, Idle,	Ignāv-us	
Slow,	Pig-er	ra rum

321. A **Man** by **Defects** in his **Spirit** is,

Ignorant,	Ignār-us
Senſleſs,	Fatŭ-us
Fooliſh,	Stult-us
Unlearned, Rude,	Rud-is

322. A **Thing** without **Defect** is,

Whole,	Tot-us	a um
	ius	
Intire,	Intĕg-er	ra rum
Perfect,	Perfect-us	

323. **Colour** is

White,	Alb-us	
Black,	Nig-er	ra rum
Yellow,	Flav-us	
Red,	Rub-er	ra rum
or *Green,*	Virĭd-is	

324. A **Reliſh** is,

Sweet,	Dulc-is	
Bitter,	Amār-us	
Harſh, Tart,	Acerb-us	
Sharp, Keen,	Ac-er	ris re
	ris	
Salt,	Salſ-us	
Freſh,	Inſulſ-us	

325. A **Smell** is

Sweet,	Suav-is	
unſavoury,	Tet-er	ra rum

326. To the **Touch** a **Body** is,

Groſs, Courſe,	Craſſ-us
or *Fine,*	Tenŭ-is
Even, plain,	Plan-us
Smooth,	Læv-is
or *Rough,*	Aſper- a um

327. **Water** is,

Cold,	Frigĭd-us
Warm,	Tepĭd-us
or *Hot,*	Calĭd-us

328. A **Burthen** is,

Heavy,	Grav-is
or *Light,*	Lev-is

329. A **Clod** is,

Hard,	Dur-us
or *Soft,*	Moll-is

330. A **Mode** is

Convenient,	Idonĕ-us
Fit-ing,	Apt-us
or *unfit,*	Inept-us

331. **Manners** are,

Honeſt, honourable,	Honeſt-us
Diſhoneſt,	Turp-is
Cleanly,	Mund-us
or *Naſty,*	Spurc-us

332. A **Man** by his **Manners** is,

Good, Vertuous,	Prob-us
or *wicked,*	Improb-us
Naughty,	Prav-us
or *Holy,*	Sanct-us
Godly,	Pi-us
or *ungodly,*	Impi-us
Righteous,	Juſt-us,
or *unrighteous,*	Injuſt-us
Chaſt,	Caſt-us
or *wanton,*	Laſcīv-us
Liberal, Free,	Liberāl-is
Covetous,	Avār-us
or *Prodigal,*	Prodĭg-us
Courteous,	Com-is

or *Cruel*,	Crudēl-is		
Good to others,	Benign-us		
or *Malicious*,	Malign-us		
True,	Verā-x cis	x	x
or *Lying*,	Mendā-x cis	x	x
Sober,	Sobrĭ-us		
or *Drunken*,	Ebrĭ-us		

333. Motion is,

Swift,	Celer- is	is	e
or *Slow*,	Tard-us		

334. A Figure is,

Round,	Rotund-us		
or *4 square*,	Quadrāt-us		

335. Time is,

Past,	Præterĭt-us		
Present,	Præsen-s tis	s	s
or *To come*,	Futūr-us		

336. By the Time of its Continuance a Thing is,

New,	Nov-us		
or *Old*,	Vet-us ĕris	us	us
Late,	Nupĕr-us		
or *Ancient*,	Antīqu-us		

337. A Day is,

An Holy-day,	Fest-us		
or *Working-day*,	Profest-us		

338. The Months are Twelve,

January,	Januarĭ-us	a	um
February,	Februarĭ-us		
March,	Martĭ-us		
April,	April-is	is	e
May,	Mai-us		
June,	Junĭ-us		
July,	Juli-us		
August,	August-us		
September,	Septemb-er ris	ris	re
October,	Octob-er ris	ris	re
November,	Novemb-er ris	ris	re
December,	Decemb-er ris	ris	re

339. A Place is,

Large,	Ampl-us		
or *Strait*,	Arct-us		
Sacred, Holy,	Sac-er	ra	rum
or *Profane*,	Profān-us		

340. By its Place a Thing is,

Far off,	Remōt-us		
or *Nigh, Neighbouring*,	Vicīn-us		
or *Next*,	Proxĭm-us		

341. The Place of a Thing is,

Commodious,	Commŏd-us		
or *Incommodious*,	Incommŏd-us		

342. A Thing by its Placeing is,

Right,	Dexter-	a	um
or *Left*,	Sinister-	a	um
Facing downward,	Pron-us		
Facing upward,	Supīn-us		

343. A Way is,

Safe,	Tut-us		
or *Dangerous*,	Periculōs-us		

344. A Travellour is,

Brisk, Chearful,	Alăc-er	ris	re
or *Weary*,	Lass-us		
or *Tired*,	Fess-us		

345. A Line is,

Streight, Right,	Rect-us		
or *Crooked*,	Curv-us		

346. Num-

In old times they began their Calends in March & April was the Second Month and May the third &c

346. **Number** is,

Even,	P-ār ăris	id. id.
or *Odd,*	Imp-ār ăris	

347. **Things** by their **Number** are,

Few,	Pauc-us
Many,	Mult-us
or *All,*	Omn-is

348. By **Number** of **Times** a **Thing** is,

Often,	Creb-er	ra rum
Frequent,	Frequen-s tis	s s
or *Seldom,*	Rar-us	

349. *How many Things are there?* Quot Plur. Ind.

So many,	Tot	Plur. Ind.
One,	Un-us ius	a um
Two,	Du-o	æ o
Three,	Tr-es	es ia
Four,	Quatuŏr	} Plur. Undec.
Five,	Quinque	
Six,	Sex	
Seven,	Septem	
Eight,	Octo	
Nine,	Novem	
Ten,	Decem	
Eleven,	Undĕcim	
Twelve,	Duodĕcim	
Twenty,	Viginti	
Thirty,	Triginta	
An Hundred,	Centum	
A Thousand,	Mille	

350. If there be **Two**,

which of the two is it?	Ut-er ius	ra rum
One of the two,	Altĕr- ius	a um
Both,	Amb-o	æ o
Neither of the two,	Neut-ĕr rius	ra rum

351. Of what **Number** or **Order** is he? Quotus

he is *First,*	Prim-us
Second,	Secund-us
Third,	Terti-us
Fourth,	Quart-us
Fifth,	Quint-us
Sixth,	Sext-us
Seventh,	Septĭm-us
Eighth,	Octāv-us
Ninth,	Non-us
Tenth,	Decĭm-us
Eleventh,	Undecĭm-us
Middlemost,	Medĭ-us
Last,	Ultĭm-us

352. **Measure** is,

Æqual,	Æquāl-is
or *Unæqual,*	Inæquāl-is

353. A **Thing** by **Measure** is,

Long,	Long-us
or *Short,*	Brev-is
Broad,	Lat-us
or *Narrow,*	Angust-us
Great,	Magn-us
Small, Little,	Parv-us
Big,	Grand-is

354. A **Sentence** is,

True,	Ver-us
or *False,*	Fals-us
Certain	Cert-us
or *Doubtful,*	Dubi-us

355. **Speech**

355. Speech is,

Serious,	Seri us,			
or *Jesting, Jocose,*	Jocōs-us			
Elegant,	Elĕgan-s	s	s	tis
or *Barbarous,*	Barbăr-us			

356. A Work is,

Easie,	Facĭl-is		
or *Hard, difficult,*	Difficĭl-is		

357. A Workman is,

Diligent,	Dilĭgen-s	s	s
or *Negligent, Careless,*	Neglĭgen-s	s	s
Worthy, of his reward,	Dign-us		
or *Unworthy*	Indign-us		

358. Merchandize is,

Dear,	Car-us
or *Cheap,*	Vil-is

359. The Price is,

Reasonable,	Æqu-us
or *Unreasonable,*	Inīqu-us

360. Business is,

Publick,	Publĭc-us
or *Private,*	Privāt-us
Open, manifest,	Manifest-us
Hidden,	Arcān-us
or *Secret,*	Secrēt-us

361. Possessions are,

Moderate,	Modĭc-us
or *too great,*	Nimĭ-us

362. Goods are,

Ones own, proper,	Propri-us
Anothers,	Alien-us
Common,	Commūn-is

363. A Man by his Possessions is,

Rich, wealthy,	Div-ĕs	ĕs	ĕs	ĭtis
or *Poor,*	Paupĕr-			is

364. A Man by his State is,

Free,	Libĕr-	a	um
or *Bond,*	Serv-us	a	um

365. A Garment is,

Loose, wide,	Lax-us
or *Strait,*	Strict-us
Comely, Decent,	Decōr-us
or *uncomely,*	Indecōr-us

366. A Feast is,

Large,	Larg-us
or *Small,*	Exĭgŭ-us

367. The Meat is,

Raw,	Crud-us
or *Dress'd, Cook'd,*	Coct-us

368. In Society a Man is,

Match'd,	Soci-us
A Friend-ly,	Amīc-us
An Enemy unfriend-ly,	Inimīc-us
without it,	
Alone,	Sol-us

369. A Servant is,

Faithfull, Trusty,	Fid-us
or *unfaithful,*	Infīd-us

370. A Master is,

Gracious, Clement,	Clemen-s
or *Furious, Curst,*	Sæv-us
Gentle,	Placĭd-us
or *Severe, Strict,*	Sevēr-us

Milde, Meek,	Mit-is			
or *Fierce,*	Atrō-x cis	x	x	

371. A Souldier is,

Safe and *Sound,*	Sosp-ĕs ĭtis	ĕs	ĕs	
or *wounded,*	Sauci-us			

372. The Accused is,

Guilty,	Son-s tis	s	s	
or *Guiltless,*	Ĭnson-s			

373. The End of Things is,

Prosperous,	Prosp̆r-	a	um
Lucky,	Faust-us		
or *unlucky,*	Infaust-us		
Sad,	Trist-is		
or *Joyous,*	Læt-us		

374. A Man at his End is,

Famous, Renowned,	Celĕb-ĕr ris	ris	re	
Happy,	Fœlī-x cis	x	x	
or *wretched,*	Misĕr-	a	um	
Saved,	Salv-us			
or *Ruined, undone,*	Perdĭt-us			

375. Hereafter you shall learn

The Rest; For	Cæt-ĕr	a	um	
More	Plū-s *Plur.* Plur-es ris	es	a	
are *Left, Remaining,*	Relĭqu-us			

CHAP. VII.

Concerning Pronouns.

Qu. YOu have heard of those words which are *Nouns* both *Substantive* and *Adjective*; *which is the next Sort of Words?*

376. *Ans.* A *Pronoun* is next.

Qu. *What is a* Pronoun?

377. *Ans.* A *Pronoun* is a Word that is used in the stead of a *Noun Substantive*, as instead of *George*, we say, *I, Thou, He,* &c.

Qu. *Which words are* Pronouns?

378. *Ans.* There be fifteen *Pronouns*; Ego, Tu, Sui, Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, Is, Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester, Nostras, Vestras.

To which add these; Quid, Quis, Alius, Alĭquis, Idem, Ullus, Nullus, Qui, Quidam, Quicunque, Uter, Neuter, Alter, Cujus, Cujas.

The

The Pronouns.

379. Qu. *What Thing* is it? *Who? which? or what?*	Quid			n.
	Qu-is	æ		od
Anſ. It is *I,*	Ego			
Thou,	Tu			
Of himſelf,	Sui			
That *Male he,*	Ille, Iſte		is	m.
That *Female ſhe,*	Illa, Iſta		ea	f.
That *Thing It,*	Illud, Iſtud		id	n.
This	Hic	hæc	hoc	
That very, its ſelf,	Ipſ-e	a	um	
Another,	Ali-us	a	ud	
The ſame,	Idem	eadem	idem	
Some one, a certain one,	Quidam *or* Aliqu-is	æ	od	
Any one,	Ull-us ius	a	um	
None,	Null-us			
That, which, who,	Qui	æ	od	
Whoever, whatever,	Quicunque			

380. Qu. *Which* or *Whether of the two?*	Ut-er rius	ra	rum	
Anſ. Neither,	Neut-er	ra	rum	
Either, one of the two,	Alter- ius	a	um	
381. Qu. *Who's?* is it,	Cuj-ûs	a	um	
Anſ. It is *Mine,*	Me-us	a	um	
Thine,	Tu-us			
His, hers, its own,	Su-us			
Ours,	Noſt-er	ra	rum	
Yours,	Veſt-er			
Theirs,	Su-us	a	um	
382. Q. *Of what Tribe or Sect* is he?	Cujā-s tis	s	s	
Anſ. He is *Of our Tribe,*	Noſtrā-s	s	s	
Of your Tribe,	Veſtrā-s	s	s	

Qu. *what is to be obſerved in theſe* Pronouns.

383. *Anſ.* Theſe five *Pronouns,* Quid, Quis, Uter, Cujus & Cujas, ask a Queſtion, and the other under each of theſe do anſwer it, and ſhew What or Which, or Whos', or of what Tribe the thing is.

Qu. *Are not ſome Pronouns* Subſtantive, *and ſome* Adjective, *as Nouns are?*

Anſ. 384. Quid, Ego, Tu, Sui, are Pronouns *Subſtantive,* all the reſt are *Adjectives.*

CHAP. VIII.

Of Verbs.

Qu. THus of *Nouns* and *Pronouns*; *what is a* Verb?

385. *Anſ.* A *Verb* is a Part of Speech, that betokeneth *To Be*, *To Do*, or (To *Suffer* i. e.) *to be done.*

Qu. *Which Words then are* Verbs?

386. *Anſ.* All thoſe Words are *Verbs*, which ſignifie to *Be*, to *Do*, or to be *Done.*

Qu. *How many ſorts of* Verbs *are there?*

387. *Anſ.* There are three Sorts of *Verbs.*

I. Some betoken *To Be*, as Eſſe *to be*, Fiĕri, *to become*; Calēre, *to be hot*; And ſuch are called *Verbs Neuter.*

II. Some denote *To do*, as Amāre, *to love*; Agĕre, *to Act*; Audīre, *to hear*; and theſe are called *Verbs Active.*

III. Some ſignify *To Suffer*, or *To be done*, as Amari, *to be loved*; Agi, *to be acted*; Audīri, *to be heard*; and theſe are called *Verbs Paſſive.*

The moſt uſual Verbs.

388. Every Thing may be ſaid

To Be,	Eſſe.
To Do, to Act,	Ag-ĕre.
To Suffer,	Pat-i

389. That which Is, uſes

To be Able,	Poſſe.
To be Preſent,	Adeſſe.
or *To be Abſent*,	Abeſſe.

390. And therefore,

To Become,	Fi-ĕri.
To Continue,	Dur-āre
To Abide, Tarry,	Man-ēre

391. That which Doth a thing ought

To Begin it.	Ord-īri.
To Proceed, Go on,	Perg-ĕre.
To Finiſh, End it,	Fin-īre.
And ſo	
To Move it,	Mov-ēre.
To Stop it,	Siſt-ĕre
To Change it,	Mut-āre.

392. To Move a thing is

To lead,	it,	Duc-ĕre.
To Thruſt		Trud-ĕre
To Roul		Volv-ĕre.
To Shake,		Quat-ĕre.

To

To Turn, To Send, To Caſt, } it, { Vert-ĕre. Mitt-ĕre. Jac-ĕre

393. To Stop a thing is

To Place, To Set, to put, To Prop, To Faſten, } it, { Loc-āre. Pon-ĕre. Fulc-īre. Fig-ĕre.

394. What is fixt uſes

To Stick faſt, Har-ēre.
To Hang, Pend-ēre.
or To Lie, Jac-ēre.

395. To Change is,

To Adde, Add-ĕre.
To Increaſe, Aug-ēre.
To Leſſen, Diminiſh, Minu-ĕre.

396. It is the Work of God.

To Create, Cre-āre.
To Rule, Reg-ĕre.
To Bleſs, Be-āre.

397. To Create is

To Make, Fac-ĕre.
To Frame, Fing-ĕre.
To Form, Form-āre.

398. To Bleſs is

To Defend, Defend-ĕre.
To Keep, Preſerve, Serv-āre.
To Save, Salv-āre.

399. It's the Act of the Devil

To Tempt, Tent-āre.
To Deceive, Fall-ĕre.
To Ruine, Deſtroy, Perd-ĕre

400. Bodies uſe

To Appear, Par-ēre

To Lye open, Be in view, Pat-ēre.
To Ly hid, Lurk, Lat-ēre.

401. Heavenly Bodies uſe

To Shine, Luc-ēre.
To Ariſe, Or-īri.
To Set, Cad-ĕre.

402. Fire is wont

To Burn, Be kindled, Ard-ēre.
To Blaze, Flagr-āre.
To Burn, Scorch, Ur-ĕre.

403. From a Cloud it uſes

To Rain, Plu-ĕre.
To Snow, Ning-ĕre.
To Thunder, Ton-āre.

404. A Vapor is wont

To ſteame forth, Hal-āre
A gale to Breath, Spir-āre.
A Winde to Blow, Fl-āre.

405. Air and Water uſe

To be Clear, Liqu-ēre.
To Quiver, Tremble, Trem-ĕre.
To be Cold, Frig-ēre.
To be Warm, Tep-ēre.
To be Hot, Cal-ēre.

406. Water is wont

To Trickle, Man-āre.
To Freez, be froz'n, Rig-ēre.
To Boil, be boiling hot, Ferv-ēre.

407. It's the Act of

A Spring to Bubble, Sal-īre.
A River to Flow, Flu-ĕre.
The Sea to Roar, Frem-ĕre.

408. A Plant ought

To Live, Viv-ĕre.
To Grow, Creſc-ĕre.
To Thrive, Vig-ēre.

409. An **Animal** uſes

To be Born,	Naſc-i.
To Suck,	Sug-ĕre.
To Feed, be Fed,	Veſc-i.

410. Every **Animal** is wont

To Perceive by ſenſe,	Sent-īre.
To Move, be moved,	Mov-ēri.
To Reſt, be Quiet,	Quieſc-ĕre.

411. To **Perceive** a thing is

To See	it,	Vid-ēre.
To Hear		Aud-īre.
To Taſt		Guſt-āre.
To Smell		Odor-āri.
To Touch		Tang-ĕre.

412. Therefore the things to be **Perceived** uſe

To Sound, make a Sound,	Son-āre.
To Taſt, Savour,	Sap-ĕre.
To Smell, give a ſmell,	Ol-ēre.

413. The **Sounds** of Beaſts are thus named.

An Horſe is wont *To Neigh,*	Hinn-īre.
An Aſs *to Bray,*	Rud-ĕre.
A Lion *to Roar,*	Rug-īre.
An Ox *to Low,*	Mug-īre
An Hog *to Grunt,*	Grunn-īre.
A Wolf *to Howl,*	Ulul-āre.
A Dog *to Bark,*	Latr-āre.
A Sheep *to Bleat,*	Bal-āre.
A Serpent *to Hiſs,*	Sibil-āre.

414. When they **Move** they uſe

To walk, to Step,	Grad-i.
To Leap,	Salt-āre.
To Go,	Ire.
To Come,	Ven-īre.
To Run,	Curr-ĕre.
To Fly,	Vol-āre.
To Swim,	N-āre.
To Creep, Crawl,	Rep-ĕre.
To Wriggle,	Serp-ĕre.

415. When they **Reſt** they uſe

To Stand,	St-āre.
To Sit,	Sed-ēre.
To Ly,	Jac-ēre.
To Ly down,	Cub-āre.

416. It's the Part of a **Male**

To Woe,	Amb-īre.
To Get,	Gign-ĕre.
or *To Beget,*	*vel* Gener-āre.

417. It's the part of a **Female**

To Bear, bring forth,	Par-ĕre.
To Cheriſh,	Fov-ēre.
To Nurſe, Nouriſh,	Nutr-īre.
And of both *To Keep, Maintain,*	Al-ĕre.

418. All **Live Bodies** uſe

To be well, Luſty,	Val-ēre.
To be Sick,	Ægrot-āre.
To Die,	Mŏr-i.

419. With his **Eyes** a man is wont

To Look, Behold,	Tu-ēri.
To Ken, Diſcern,	Cern-ĕre.
To View,	Luſtr-āre.

420. With his **Mouth** he is wont

To Gape,	Hi-āre.
To Kiſs,	Oſcul-āri.
To Cry, Bewl,	Clam-āre.

To

To Speak, Loqu-i.

421. When he Speaketh not, he uſes

To hold his tongue, Tac-ēre.
To be ſilent, Sil-ēre.
or To Mutter, Mut-īre.

422. To Speak is

To Ask, to Queſtion, Rog-āre.
To Anſwer, Reſpond-ēre.
To Say, Dic-ĕre.
To Say, or affirm, Ai-ĕre.
To Deny, Neg-āre.
To Beg, Beſeech, Or-āre.
To Bid, Command, Jub-ēre.
To Forbid, Vet-āre.
To Tell, Narr-āre.

423. By Speech we uſe

To Salute, Salut-āre.
To Adviſe, Suad-ēre.
To Exhort, Hearten, Hort-āri.
To Admoniſh, Mind, Mon-ēre.
To Praiſe, Laud-āre.
To Diſpraiſe, Vituper-āre.
To Prate, Garr-īre.
To Lie, Ment-īri.

424. The Tongue uſes

To Lick, Ling-ĕre.
To Lap, Lamb-ĕre.

425. With their Teeth men uſe

To Bite, Mord-ēre.
To Gnaw, Rod-ĕre.
To Chew, Mand-ĕre.

426. With our Hands we uſe

To Lay hold on, Prend-ĕre.
To Take, Cap-ĕre.
or Sum-ĕre.
To Snatch, Rap-ĕre.
To hold, Ten-ēre.

427. With his Fingers a man uſes

To Preſs, Prem-ĕre.
To Pull, Pluck, Vell-ĕre,
To Twiſt, Wreath, Torqu-ēre.

428. With his Nails

To Claw, Scab-ĕre.
To Scratch, Scalp-ĕre.
To Tear, Lani-āre.

429. With his Palms

To Rub, Fric-āre.
To Crumble, Wear, Ter-ĕre.
With the Fiſt
To Thump, Tund-ĕre.

430. With his Feet he uſes

To Walk, Ambul-āre.
To Kick, Stamp, Calc-āre.
To Climb, Go up, Scand-ĕre.

431. When he Walks he uſes

To Haſten, Feſtin-āre
To Loiter, Stay, Mor-āri.
To Wander up and down. Vag-āri
To Stray, Erre, Err-āre.

432. And ſometimes

To Slip, Lab-i
To Fall, Cad-ĕre.
To Riſe, Surg-ĕre.

---

433. The Acts of the Senſitive Soul are,

To be Awake, Vigil-āre.
To Sleep, Dorm-īre.
To Dream, Somni-āre.
To Faſt, Jejun-āre.

To Hunger, Eſur-īre.
To Thirſt, Sit-īre.

434. When **Hungry** we uſe

To Eat, Ed-ĕre.
To Swallow, Vor-āre.
To Feaſt, Epul-āri.

435. To **Eat a Meal** is

To Breakfaſt, Jent-āre.
To Dine, Prand-ēre.
To Sup, Cœn-āre.

436. When **Thirſty** we uſe

To Sip up, Sorb-ēre.
To Drink, Bib-ĕre.
To Tipple, Fuddle, Pot-āre.

437. I'ts the Act of the **Underſtanding**

To Think, Cogit-āre.
To Muſe, Study, Medit-āri.
To Conſider, Conſider-āre
To Believe, Cred-ĕre.

438. For an **Underſtanding Man** will not be content

To be Ignorant, Ignor-āre.
To Doubt, Dubit-āre.
To Phant'ſi, Think, or Suppoſe, Opin-āre *vel* Put-āre.

439. But will Endeavour

To underſtand, Intellig-ĕre.
To Know, Noſc-ĕre.
To Know perfectly, Sc-īre.

440. It's the part of the **Memory**

To Remember, or Keep in mind, Memin-iſſe.
To Forget, Obliviſc-i.

To Remember, or Call to mind, Reminiſc-i, *vel* Record-āri.

441. It's the Act of the **Judgment**

To Judge, Judic-āre.
To Like, Approve, Prob-āre.
To Prize, Eſteem, Æſtim-āre.
To Deſpiſe, Scorn, Spern-ĕre.
To Contemn, Temn-ĕre.
To Slight, Neglect, Neglig-ĕre.

442. It's the Work of the **Will**

To will, Velle.
To Nill, Nolle.
To choose, Elig-ĕre.

443. It's the work of the **Affections**

To Love, Am-āre.
To Hate, Od-iſſe.
To Deſire, Covet, Cup-ĕre.
To Favour, Fav-ēre.
To Grudge, Envy, Invid-ēre.
To Hope, Sper-āre.
To Fear, Tim-ēre.
To be Glad, Rejoice, Gaud-ēre.
To Grieve, be Sad, Mœr-ēre.
To be Angry, Iraſc-i.

444. In **Grief** Men uſe

To weep, Fl-ēre.

In **Joy**

To Laugh, Rid-ēre.
To Clap hands, Plaud-ĕre.

445. It's the Act of the **Faculties**

To Try, Attempt, Tent-āre.
To Venture, be Bold, Aud-ēre.
To Endeavour, Con-āri.
To Study, Stud-ēre.
To Avoid, Vit-āre.

446. **Good**

446. Good Things men uſe

To wiſh for, Lack,	Opt-āre.
To expect,	Ex-Spect-āre.
To Seek,	Quær-ĕre.
To Find,	Inven-īre.
To Obtain,	Nanciſc-i.
To Get,	Por-īri.

447. What they have Gotten they uſe

To Have,	Hab-ēre.
To Poſſeſs.	Poſſid-ēre.
To uſe, make uſe of,	Ut-i.
To Enjoy,	Fru-i.

448. Evil Things Men ought

To Leave,	Linqu-ĕre.
To Let alone,	Sin-ĕre.
To Beware of,	Cav-ēre.
To Dread,	Formid-āre.
To Shun, Flee,	Fug-ĕre.

449. Things Unknown they uſe

To Hide, Conceal,	Cel-āre.
To Shew,	Monſtr-āre.
To Prove,	Prob-āre.
To Clear, make out,	Argu-ĕre.

450. If Things be Many they are able

To Number, Count	them	Numer-āre
To Mingle, mixt		Miſc-ēre.
To Join		Jung-ĕre.
To Separate		Separ-āre
To Divide,		Divid-ĕre
To Gather,		Leg-ĕre
To Scatter,		Sparg-ĕre.

451. Bulky Things they uſe

To Meaſure,	Menſur-āre.
To weigh,	Ponder-āre.
To Liſt,	Toll-ĕre.
To Bear,	Fer-re.
To Carry,	Port-āre.

452. Things that Ly along they are able

To Raiſe, Set up,	Statu-ĕre.
To Strengthen,	Firm-āre.
To knock down, fell,	Stern-ĕre.

453. Limber Things they are able

To Bow,	In-Clin-āre.
To Bend,	Flect-ĕre
To Stretch,	Tend-ĕre.

454. Clean Things they uſe

To Foul,	Inquin-āre.
To Blot, Blur,	Macul-āre.
To Daub,	Lin-ĕre.
And then again	
To wipe,	Terg-ĕre.
To Cleanſe,	Purg-āre.
To Bruſh, Sweep,	Verr-ĕre.

455. Cloaths Men are wont

To Put on,	Indu-ĕre.
To Put off,	Exu-ĕre.
To Gird,	Cing-ĕre.

456. A Candle they uſe

To Light,	Accend-ĕre.
To Snuff,	Mung-ĕre.
To Put out,	Extingu-ĕre.

457. Water they uſe

To Draw,	Haur-īre.

To Pour out, Fund-ĕre.

458. Their Doors they uſe

To Shut, Claud-ĕre.
To Open, Aper-īre.
To Lock, Obſer-āre.

459. Into their Houſes they uſe

To Enter, Intr-āre.
To Dwell, Habit-āre.
or To Remove, Flit, Migr-āre.

460. Men do many Acts by Inſtruments, as with a Sword they uſe

To Smite, Cæd-ĕre.
To Cut, Slaſh, Scind-ĕre.
To Prick, Pung-ĕre.

461. With an Ax

To Strike, Fer-īre.
To Cut, Hew, Sec-āre.
To Cleave, Find-ĕre.

462. With a Beetle

To Drive, Pell-ĕre.
To Break, Frang-ĕre.
To Burſt, Rump-ĕre.

463. With a Rope they uſe

To Bind, Vinc-īre.
To Tie, Lig-āre.
To Looſe, Solv-ĕre.
To Draw, Drag, Trah-ĕre.

464. With a Club they uſe

To Beat, Verber-āre.
To Keep off, Arc-ēre.
To Drive away, Fug-āre.

465. With a Garment they uſe

To Cloath, Veſt-īre.
To Cover, Teg-ĕre.
To Hide, Vail, Vel-āre.

466. With Water they are wont

To waſh, Lav-āre.
To Sprinkle, Ting-ĕre.
To Drown, Plunge, Merg-ĕre.

467. In Society Men ought

To duely Regard one another, Col-ĕre.
To Help one another, Juv-āre.
To Comfort one another, Sol-āri.
not To Wrong one another, Læd-ĕre.
To Hurt, Harm one another, Noc-ēre.
To Vex one another, Vex-āre.

468. Neighbours are wont

To Aſk, Beg, Pet-ĕre.
To Promiſe, Pro-Mitt-ĕre.
To Engage, Spond-ēre.
To Perform, Præſt-āre.
To Give, D-are.
To Receive, Accip-ĕre.

469. Their Adverſary they uſe

To Yeild to, Ced-ĕre.
To Affrighten, Terr-ēre,
To Beat, Conquer, Vinc-ĕre.

470. In Imployments all Men are bound

To Care, take care, Cur-āre.
To Diſcharge themſelves, Fung-i.
To Labour, Toil, Labor-āre.

471. Aft

471. After Buſineſs they uſe

To take their Eaſe,	Oti-āri.
To be at Leiſure,	Vac-āre.
To Play,	Lud-ĕre.

472. It's the Work of a Merchant

To Buy,	Em-ĕre.
To Sell,	Vend-ĕre.

473. It's the Part of the Buyer

To Owe,	Deb-ēre.
To Pay,	Solv-ĕre.

474. It's the Phyſicions work

To Cure, Look to,	Cur-āre.
To Cure, Heal,	Med-ēri.
To make ſound,	San-āre.

475. For Sick-men uſe

To be in pain,	Dol-ēre.
To Languiſh, Pine,	Langu-ēre.
To Groan,	Gem-ĕre.
To Complain,	Quer-i.
And ſometimes	
To Rage, be mad,	Fur-ĕre.
To Caſt, vomit,	Vom-ĕre.

476. It's the Builders Work

To Found,	Fund-āre.
To Build,	Stru-ĕre.
To Adorn,	Orn-āre.

477. A Smith uſes

To File,	Lim-āre.
To Sharpen, whet,	Acu-ĕre.
To Bore,	For-āre.

478. Painters, Weavers, Taylors, Spinſters uſe to

Paint,	Ping-ĕre
Weave,	Tex-ĕre
Sew, &	Su-ĕre.
Botch,	Sarc-īre
Spin,	N-ēre.

479. The Barbers work is

To Comb,	Pect-ĕre.
To Clip,	Tond-ĕre.
To Trim,	Com-ĕre.

480. It's the work of a Gardener

To Dig,	Fod-ĕre.
To Plant.	Plant-āre.
To Crop the Fruit,	Carp-ĕre.

481. It's the Husbandmans Work

To Plow,	Ar-āre.
To Sow,	Ser-ĕre.
To Mow, Reap,	Met-ĕre.

482. Bakers uſe

To Pounſe,	Pinſ-ĕre.
To Knead,	Depſ-ĕre.
Millers	
To Grind,	Mol-ĕre.

483. The Herdſman is

To Feed,	Paſc-ĕre.
To Milk,	Mulg-ēre.
The Fiſher *to Fiſh,*	Piſc-āri.
The hunter *to hunt,*	Venā-ri.

484. The Cooks work is

To Cook, Dreſs,	Coqu-ĕre.
To Salt,	Sal-īre.
To Pickle, Candy,	Cond-īre.

485. To

485. To Dress Meat is

To Boyl, Seeth,	Elix-āre.
To Rost,	Ass-āre.
To Fry,	Frig-ĕre.
To Broil, Tost,	Torr-ēre.

486. The Steward ought

To Set up,	Cond-ĕre
To Bring out,	Prom-ĕre.

487. A Beggar uses

To Want, be without,	Car-ēre.
To Want, or Need,	Eg-ēre.
To Beg,	Mendic-āre.

488. A Traveller uses

To Travel, go,	Vad-ĕre.
To Follow the guide,	Sequ-i.

489. A Teacher ought

To Teach,	Doc-ēre.
To Exercise.	Exerc-ēre.
To Chastise,	Castig-āre.

490. The Learner ought

To Attend,	Attend-ĕre.
To Imitate,	Imit-āri.
To Learn,	Disc-ĕre.

491. Things to be Learned are

To Do, to Act	well,	Ag-ĕre.
To Read		Leg-ĕre.
To Write,		Scrib-ĕre.

492. It's the Office of a Magistrate

To Command, Lay a Charge,	Imper-āre.
To Enact Laws,	Sanc-īre.

493. It's the Part of a King

To Reign,	Regn-āre.
To Commissionate, send Commissioners,	Leg-āre.
To Subdue Enemies,	Dom-āre.

494. Its the Duty of Subjects

To fear, stand in aw,	Ver-ēri.
To Obey,	Par-ēre.
not *To Murmur,*	Murmur āre.

495. Before a Court we use

To Call	men,	Voc-āre.
To Cite		Cit-āre.
To Accuse		Accus-āre.
To Excuse		Excus-āre.

496. Witnesses use

To Swear,	Jur-āre.
To Witness, bear--	Test-āri.

497. The Judge ought

To Acquit,	Ab-Solv-ĕre.
or *Condemn,*	Damn-āre. Con-Demn-āre.
To Spare,	Parc-ĕre.
or *Punish,*	Pun-īre.

498. The Executioners Work is

To Torment,	Cruci-āre.
To Strangle, Choak,	Strangul-āre.
To Hang-up,	Sus-Pend-ĕre.

499. The Persons to be Executed are such as use

To Steal,	Fur-āri.
To Betray,	Prod-ĕre.
To Kill, Murder,	Nec-āre.

500. [illegible]ldier ought

To serve, de[illegible]	[illegible]-ēri.
To Fight,	Pugn-āre.

501. In

501. In the Church men uſe

To Pray,	Prec-āri.
To Sing,	Can-ĕre.
To Preach,	Prædic-āre.

502. To Do well uſeth

To be Allowed,	Lic-ēre.
To Become one,	Dec-ēre.

503. To Do ill uſes

To Grieve, Pain	one,	Pænit-ēre.
To Irk, Fret		Pig-ēre.
To weary		Tæd-ēre.
To Shame		Pud-ēre.

504. To Do amiſs is

To Sin,	Pecc-āre.
To Offend,	Of-fend-ĕre.
To Diſorder, Diſturb,	Turb-āre.

Qu. *Now tell me, of theſe* Verbs *following, which betoken* To Be, *which* To Do, *and which* To Suffer?

Am-āre,	*To Love,*
Eſſe,	*To Be.*
Put-āre,	*To Think.*
Val-ēre,	*To be well.*
Mov-ēri,	*To be Moved.*
Quer-i	*To Complain.*
Ægrot-āre,	*To be Sick.*
Vid-ēri,	*To be Seen.*
Aud-īri.	*To be Heard.*

505. *Anſ.* ——

CHAP. IX.

Of a Participle.

Qu. THus you have ſeen, *Nouns, Pronouns* and *Verbs,* the next Sort of Words is a *Participle, What is a* Participle?

506. *Anſ.* A *Participle* is a Part of Speech derived of a Verb, and betokens *being, Doing* or *Suffering,* as a Verb doth, but is uſed like a Noun.

Qu. *Which words then are* Participles?

507. *Anſ.* All thoſe words are *Participles,* which

1. Are

1. Are derived of ſome Verb.
2. Betoken *Being Doing* or *Suffering*, as Verbs do.
And 3. Are declined and conſtructed as Nouns.

Qu. *How many Sorts of* Participles *are there?*

508. *Anſ.* Some Participles are *Subſtantive*, and ſome are *Adjective.*

Qu. *Which Participles are* Subſtantive?

509. *Anſ.* Thoſe called Supines ending in *Tum*, or *Sum*, or *Xum* are Participles Subſtantive; and from theſe is oft formed a Latter Supine in *u.*

as from { Am-āre *to Love*, Am-ātum *to Love*, Am-ātu *to be Loved.* (*demned*
Damn-āre *to condemn*, damn-ātum *to condemn*, damnat-u *to be con-*
Purg-āre *to Purge*, purg-ātum *to purge*, purgāt-u *to be purged.*

from { Fl-ēre *to weep*, fl-ētum *to weep*, fl-ētu *to be wept.*
Impl-ēre *to fill*, impl-ētum *to fill*, impl-ētu *to be filled.*
Hab-ēre *to have*, hab-ĭtum *to have*, hab-ĭtu *to be had.*

from { Legĕ-re *to read*, lectum *to read*, lectu *to be read.*
Em-ĕre *to buy*, emtum *to buy*, emtu *to be bought.*
Flect-ĕre *to bend*, flexum *to bend*, flexu *to be bent.*

from { Aud-īre *to hear*, audītum *to hear*, audītu *to be heard.*
Haur-īre *to draw*, hauſtum *to draw*, hauſtu *to be drawn.*
Ven-īre *to come*, ventum *to come*, —

Qu. *How many ſorts of* Participles Adjective?

510. *Anſ.* There be four kinds of *Participles Adjective.*

I. Some end in *ans* or *ens*, or *iens.*
II. Some end in *andus* or *endus*, or *iendus.*
III. Some in *turus* or *ſurus* or *xurus.*
IV. Some in *tus* or *ſus*, or *xus.*

511. I. In *ans*, *ens* or *iens.*

as from { Am-āre *to love*, am-ans *loving.*
Damn-āre *to condemn*, damn-ans *condemning.*
Mir-āri *to wonder*, mir-ans *wondring*,

from { Fl-ēre *to weep*, fl-ens *weeping.*
Hab-ēre *to have*, hab-ens *having.*
Ver-ēri *to fear*, verens *fearing.*

from { Leg-ĕre *to read*, leg-ens *reading.*
Em-ĕre *to buy*, em-ens *buying.*
Veſc-i *to feed*, veſc-ens *feeding.*

from

from { Aud-īre *to hear*, aud-iens *hearing*.
Haur-īre *to draw*, haur-iens *drawing*.
Ment-īri *to ly*, ment-iens *lying*.

512. II. In *audus*, *endus* or *iendus*. as

from { Am-āri *to be loved*, am-andus *one to be loved*.
Damn-āri *to be condemned*, damn-andus *one to be condemned*.
Mir-āri *to wonder*, mir-andus *one to be admired at*.

from { Fl-ēri *to be bewailed*, fl-endus *one to be bewailed*.
Hab-ēri *to be had*, hab-endus *one to be had*.
Ver-ēri *to fear* Ver-endus *one to be feared*.

from { Leg-i *to be read*, leg-endus *one to be read*.
Pung-i *to be pricked*, pung-endus *one to be pricked*.
Em-i *to be bought*, em-endus *one to be bought*.

from { Aud-īri *to be heard*, aud-iendus *one to be heard*.
Haur-īri *to be drawn*, haur-iendus *one to be drawn*.
Cond-īri *to be pickled*, cond-iendus *one to be pickled*.

N. B. *These two sorts of* Participles *are formed, as you see, from the* Verb; *the other two following are formed from the first Supine*,

513. III. In *turus*, *surus* or *xurus*, as

from { Amāt-um *to love*, amat-ūrus *one about to love*.
Damnāt-um *to condemn*, damnat-ūrus *about to condemn*.
Mirāt-um *to wonder*, mirat-ūrus *about to wonder*.

from { Flēt-um *to weep*, flet-ūrus *one about to weep*.
Habīt-um *to have*, habit-ūrus *one about to have*.
Implēt-um *to fill*, implet-ūrus *one going to fill*.

from { Lect-um *to read*, lect-ūrus *one about to read*.
Flex-um *to bend*, Flex-ūrus *one going to bend*.
Vis-um *to see*, Vis-ūrus *one about to see*.

from { Audīt-um *to hear*, audit-ūrus *one about to hear*.
Haust-um *to draw*, haust-ūrus *one about to draw*.
Condīt-um *to candy*, condit-ūrus *one going to candy*.

514. IV. In *tus*, *sus* or *xus*, as

from { Amāt-um *to love*, amāt-us *loved, being loved*.
Damnāt-um *to damn*, damnāt-us *damned, having been damned*.
Nex-um *to knit*, nex-us *knit*.

from

from { Flet-um *to bewail*, flet-us *bewailed.*
Habĭt-um *to have*, habĭt-us *had, having been had.*
Juſſ-um *to command*, juſſ-us *commanded.*

from { Lect-um *to read*, lect-us *read, having been read.*
Emt-um *to buy*, emt-us *having been bought.*
Viſ-um *to ſee*, Viſ-us *ſeen*, &c.

from { Audīt-um *to hear*, audīt-us *heard.*
Hauſt-um *to draw*, hauſt-us *one drawn.*
Condĭt-um *to candy*, condĭt-us *a thing candied.*

N. B. *So that the three firſt ſorts of* Participles *ſignifie* Imperfectly;

1. *In* ans, ens, & iens *being or doing.*
2. *In* andus, endus & iendus *about to be done.*
3. *In* turus, ſurus, or xurus, *about to do.*

The fourth ſort in tus, ſus, *or* xus *ſignifie* Perfectly, Amat-us *loved already*, doct-us *taught already*, &c.

Qu. *Now tell me, what* Participles *are formed from theſe* Verbs?

Narr-āre	*to Tell*,	Perd-ĕre	*to Deſtroy*,	Fod-ĕre	*to Dig*,
Doc-ēre	*to Teach*,	Mol-ĕre	*to Grind*,	Form-āre	*to Form*,
Gem-ĕre	*to Groan*,	Sc-ire	*to Know*,	Pol-īre	*to Poliſh*,
Quer-i	*to Complain.*				

515. *Anſ.* ——

Qu. *From theſe Supines what* Participles *are formed*,

Narrat-um *to tell*,	Perdĭt-um *to loſe*,	Foſſ-um *to dig*,
Doct-um *to teach*,	Molĭt-um *to grinde*,	Formatum *to form*,
Gemĭt-um *to groan*,	Scīt-um *to know*,	Polīt-um *to poliſh*,
Que-ſtum *to complain.*		

516. *Anſ.* ——

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of Adverbs.

Qu. WHat *is an* Adverb?

517. *Anſ.* An *Adverb* is a Part of Speech joined to the Verbs to declare their ſignification.

Qu. *How do* Adverbs *declare the ſignification of Verbs?*

518. *Anſ.* The Verb ſignifies *to be*, or *to do*, or *to be done*, and the *Adverb* is joyned to it to ſhew *whether* or *no* one *is*, or *does*, or *is done*, or *when*, or *where*, or *how oft*, or *how* one *is*, *does* or *ſuffers*.

Qu. *Which Words then are* Adverbs?

519. *Anſ.* Thoſe Words are *Adverbs*, that being joined to *Verbs*, tell *whether* or *no*, *where*, *when*, *how*, *how oft* a thing *is*, *does*, or *ſuffers*.

The moſt uſual Adverbs.

520. Q. *whether* or *no* is your Father come?	Num, an, ne.
Anſ. Perhaps,	Fortaſſe.
Yis, yea,	Ita, Næ.
Almoſt,	Fĕre.
At leaſt,	Saltem.
No, not,	Non, Haud.
Scarcely,	Vix.
521. Q. *whence* came he?	Unde.
Anſ. From hence,	Hinc?
Thence,	Inde, Iſtinc, Illinc.
522. Q. *whither* goes he?	Quo?
Anſ. Hither,	Hūc.
Thither,	Illūc *or* Iſtūc.
523. Q. *where* is he?	Ubi.
Anſ. He is	
Here,	Hīc.
There,	Ibi, Illīc, Iſtīc.
Abroad,	Foris.
within,	Intus.
If *Any where*,	Uſquam.
No where,	Nuſquam.
Every where,	Ubiq;
Far off,	Procul.
Nigh,	Prope.
524. Qu. *when* do you dine with him?	Quando.
Anſ. Now,	Nunc?
Even now,	Jam, Nunc.
To Day,	Hŏdie.
Always,	Semper.

525. Q. *When* **came he?**

Anſ. Then,	Tunc, Tum.
When **you came,**	Cum.
Even then,	Jam, Tum.
Yeſterday,	Heri.
Ere-while,	Dudum.
Long ago,	Olim.

526. Q. *When* **will he return?**

Anſ. To Morrow,	Cras.
Straight, by and by,	Mox, Statim.
If *At any time,*	Unquam.
Never,	Nunquam.
Sometime,	Aliquando.

527. Q. *How long* **ſtayes he?** Quamdiu?

Anſ. A great while, Long,	Diu.
A little while,	Parumper.
until that,	Donec.

528. Q. *How* **do yo write?** Quomodo.

Anſ. **I write**	*Well,*	Bene.
	Ill,	Male.
	Very well,	Valde bene.
	Neatly,	Nitide.

529. Q. *How oft* **write you?** Quoties?

Anſ. **I write**	*Once,*	Semel.
	Again,	Itĕrum.
	Twice.	Bis.
	Thrice,	Ter.
	Oft, Often,	Sæpe.
	Seldom,	Raro.
	Sometimes, Now & then,	Interdum.

530. Qu. **Come your letters**

Together,	Simul.
or *Aſunder one by one,*	Seorſim.
Anſ. At once, together,	Unà.

531. Q. *Why, wherefore.* Quare? Cur?

To what end,	Quorſum.
Anſ. To no purpoſe, Raſhly,	Temĕre.
In vain,	Fruſtra.

CHAP. XI.

Concerning a Præpoſition.

Qu. WHat *is a* Præpoſition?

532. *Anſ.* A *Præpoſition* is a word ſet before a Subſtantive, and betokens the reſpect one thing has to another, as that one thing is *Before* another or *Behind* it, *within* it or *without* it, *Beyond* it or *Behither* it, *Againſt* it or *For* it, *Above* it or *Below* it, &c.

Qu. *How*

Q. *How many* Præpositions *are there?*

533. *Ans.* There be Three and Forty Words which are Præpositions,

Ad,	*At, To.*
Adverſ-us *or* um	*Toward, Againſt.*
Apud	*At, with.*
Ante	*Before.*
Cis } Citra }	*Behither, ſhort of.*
Circum	*About, Round.*
Circa	*About, nigh, near to.*
Contra	*Againſt, over-againſt.*
Erga	*Towards, To.*
Extra	*Without, on the outſide.*
Intra	*Within.*
Infra	*Beneath, below.*
Inter	*Between, betwixt, among.*
Juxta	*Beſide, nigh to, after.*
Ob	*For, becauſe of, upon Account of.*
Penĕs	*within ones power, or keeping.*
Per	*By means of, through*
Pone	*Behind, after.*
Poſt	*Behind, after, ſince.*
Præter	*Beſide, except, ſave, but.*
Propter	*For, by reaſon of, hard by.*
Secundum	*After, according to.*
Secus	*By, nigh to, cloſe by.*
Supra	*Above, over.*
Trans	*Beyond, over.*
Ultra	*Beyond, over.*
So far they have an Accuſative	
Ab *or* A *or* Abs	*Of, from, by, after.*
Abſque	*Without, not with.*
Cum	*With, together with.*
Coram	*Before ones face, in preſence of.*
Clam	*Behind ones back, without ones knowledge.*
These have an Ablative all from ab to tenus	
De {	*Of about, concerning.* *From, of, out of.*
Ex *or* e	*Out of, from, of.*
Palam	*Before, in ſight of.*
Præ	*Before, than, in compariſon of.*
Pro	*For, Inſtead of.*
Sine	*Without, not with*
Tenus	*up to, unto.*
In }	*In.* These four have ſome times an Accuſative
	Into, towards, upon & ſome times an Ablative
Sub	*under.*
Subter	*under.*
Super {	*upon.* *Concerning, about.*

CHAP. XII.

Of a Conjunction.

Qu. *What is a* Conjunction?

534. *Anſ.* A *Conjunction* is a word which joyneth two Sentences together, thus,

535. Q. *whether* An, Num.
Doth the King come
or *No* Ne, Necne?
Doth *not* Nonne?
the King come?

536. The King comes
And Et, que, ac, atque.
Alſo, Too. Quoque.
The Queen comes.

537. *Neither* Neque, Nec
The King comes
Nor Neque, Nec
The Queen comes.

538. *Either* Aut, vel, ſive, ſeu
The King comes
Or, or elſe Aut, vel, ſive, ſeu
The Queen comes.

539. *Yes, indeed* Quidem
The King comes
But Sed, at, aſt, vero
The Queen comes not.

540. The Queen will come
Becauſe, Quia
Seeing that, Quum, Quoniam
The King comes.

541. The Queen will not come
For, Nam, namq; enim.
The King doth not come.

542. The Queen comes
If, ſo that, Si, modo, dum.
If ſo be that, Dummodo.
The King comes.

543. The Queen comes not
unleſs, Except Ni, niſi
The King comes.

544. The King comes
Therefore, Ergo, igitur
The Queen will come.

545. *Although,* Quamquam
Though, Albeit, Quamvis
The King ſhould come
Yet Tamen
The Queen will not come.

546. The King comes
That, to the end that, Ut
The Queen may come.

547. *I wiſh,* O
That, Ut, uti, utinam
The King would come.

548. The King comes ſooner
Than, Quam
The Queen comes.

CHAP

CHAP. XIII.

Of An Interjection.

Qu. WHat *is an* Interjection?

549. *Anſ.* An *Interjection* is a Word, which betokens ſome ſudden paſſion of the mind, ſuch as theſe:

High l Highday!	Vah! Papæ!	*Wo; welladay!*	Hei! Væ!
Lo! look ye! be-hold!	En! Ecce!	*Phy! out!*	Au! Phy! Apage!
		O Brave!	Evax! Vah!
Hah! Hum!	Hem!	*Ah! alack! alaſs!*	Heu! hei! eheu!
Piſh! ſhah! faugh!	Hui! Vah!	*Ha! anon! non!*	Hem! ha!
Oh-ho-ho!	Ha ha he!	*Come on! Go w'!*	Eia! agê!
Oh! ô! ſoho!	ô! eho! heus!	*'St! huſh! hwiſht!*	'St! Au! &c.

Qu. *Theſe are the Eight ſeveral ſorts of words, Now tell me, of theſe words following, which are* Nouns, *which* Pronouns, *which* Verbs, *&c.*

Tu	*Thou.*	Ut,	*That.*
Ego	*I.*	Meus,	*Mine.*
Treměre	*To Tremble.*	Tuus,	*Thine.*
Phy!	*Out upon't!*	Et,	*And.*
Temĕre,	*Raſhly.*	Sed,	*But,*
Contra,	*Againſt one.*	O!	*Oh!*
Suavis,	*Sweet.*	Quoties,	*How oft.*
Puer,	*A Boy.*	Bene,	*well.*
Tamen,	*Yet.*	Malè,	*Ill.*
Solus,	*Alone.*	Bonus	*Good.*
Mulier,	*A Woman.*	Malus,	*Bad.*
Arbor,	*A Tree.*	Quies,	*Reſt.*
Hic,	*Here.*	Fortaſſis,	*Perchance.*
Illic,	*There.*	En,	*Lo.*
Si	*If.*		

550. *Anſ.* ——

CHAP. XIV.

Concerning the Declining of Words.

Qu. HAving ſeen the *Eight Sorts* of words, now you muſt learn, which of them are *Declined*, and which are *undeclined*: Therefore, *what is it to* Decline *a word?*

551. *Anſ.* To *Decline* a word is to turn it into diverſe endings, as

Hom-o	*a Man*	is turned into	Hom-ines	*Men.*
Puer	*a Boy*		Puer-i	*Boys.*
Muſ-a	*a Song*		Muſ-æ	*Songs.*

Q. *May all Sorts of words be thus* Declined *into divers endings?*

552. *Anſ.* No words that are *Adverbs*, *Conjunctions*, *Præpoſitions* or *Interjections*, can be thus turned into divers endings, but all ſuch words keep their firſt ending and ſo are *undeclined*, as

Semel, *once.* Et, *and.* Ad, *to.* Heu! *Alaſs* &c.

Qu. *Which words then are they, that be* Declined?

553. *Anſ.* All words that are *Nouns*, or *Pronouns*, or *Verbs*, or *Participles* may be declined.

Qu. *What are you to conſider in every* Declined *word?*

554. *Anſ.* I ought to know, 1. Of what *Number* every *Declined* word is. 2. Of what *Perſon* it is. and 3. How it is *Declined.*

I. *Of Numbers.*

Qu. *How many* Numbers *be there?*

555. *Anſ.* There be two Numbers, The *Singular* and the *Plural.*

Qu. *Which words* are of the *Singular* Number?

556. *Anſ.* Thoſe Words are of the *Singular* Number, which ſignify but one, as,

Homo,	*a Man.*	Malum,	*an Apple.*	Ego amo,	*I love.*
Puer,	*a Boy.*	Caput,	*an Head.*	Tu amas,	*Thou loveſt.*
Muſa,	*a Song.*	Cornu,	*an Horn.*	Ille amat,	*He loves.*

Qu. *Which words are of the* Plural *Number?*

557. *Anſ.*

557. *Anſ.* Thoſe words are of the *Plural* Number, which betoken more than one, as

Homĭnes,	*Men.*	Mala,	*Apples.*	Nos amāmus,	*we love.*
Puĕri,	*Boys.*	Capĭta,	*Heads.*	Vos amātis,	*Ye love.*
Muſæ,	*Songs.*	Cornŭa,	*Horns.*	Illi amant,	*They love.*

Qu. *Of theſe words following tell, which are of the* Singular *Number? and which of the* Plural?

Terra,	*Land.*	Manus	*an Hand.*	Arma,	*Arms.*
Canes,	*Dogs.*	Ceraſa,	*Cherryes.*	Schola,	*a School.*
Templum	*a Church.*	Nuces,	*Nuts.*	Diſcipulus	*a Scholar.*

558. *Anſ.* ——

II. *Of the Three Perſons.*

Qu. *How many* Perſons *are there?*

559. *Anſ.* There be three *Perſons*, the Firſt, the Second, and the Third.

Qu. *What is the* Firſt Perſon?

560. *Anſ*, The *Firſt Perſon* is that which ſpeaketh of its ſelf.

Qu. *What is the* Second Perſon?

561. *Anſ.* The *Second Perſon* is that which is ſpoken to.

Qu. *What is the* Third Perſon?

562. *Anſ.* The *Third Perſon*, which neither ſpeaketh, nor is ſpoken to, but is ſpoken of.

Qu. *Then which words are of the* Firſt Perſon?

563. *Anſ.* Theſe words are of the *Firſt Perſon*, which repreſent the thing as ſpeaking of its ſelf, as

Ego Thomas amo, *I Thomas love.* Nos Pueri amamus, *we boys love.*

Qu. *Which words are of the* Second Perſon?

564. *Anſ.* Thoſe words are of the *Second Perſon*, which denote the thing as ſpoken to, as

Tu Thomas amas, *Thou Thomas loveſt.* Vos Pueri amatis, *Ye Boys love.*

Qu. *Anſ. What words are of the* Third Perſon?

565. *Anſ.* Thoſe Words are of the *Third Perſon*, which betoken the thing neither as ſpeaking, nor as ſpoken to, but as ſpoken of, as

Thomas amat, *Thomas loves.* Hi Pueri amant, *theſe Boys love.*

Qu. *Now tell me of theſe words following, whch are of the* Firſt Perſon, *and which of the* Second, *and which of the* Third?

Ego Puer canto, *I a Child ſing.*

Tu Senex ſaltas, *Thou an old man danceſt.*

Illa Mulier ridet, *That Woman laugheth.*

Vos Pueri cantatis, *You Boys ſing.*

Nos Senes ſaltamus, *We old men dance.*
Illæ Mulieres rident, *Theſe Women laugh.*
Samuel ſcribit, *Samuel writeth.* Pueri ludunt, *the Boys play.*
Nos ſcribimus, *we write.* Vos luditis, *ye play.*
Ego ſcribo, *I write.* Tu ludis, *thou playeſt.*
566. *Anſ.* ——

III. *Of the Declining of Words.*

Qu. *Are all Declinable words declined after one faſhion?*
567. *Anſ.* Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles are *Declined* after one manner, and Verbs are *Declined* after another.

CHAP. XV.

The Declining of Nouns, Pronouns and Participles.

Qu. *TO the right declining of Nouns, Pronouns and Participles, what is to be known?*
Anſ. 568. Of every Noun, Pronoun and Participle, it ought to be known
I. Of what *Gender* it is.
II. Of what *Caſe* it is.
III. Of what *Declenſion* it is.

I. *Of the Three Genders.*

Qu. *How many Genders be there?*
569. *Anſ.* As of Things,
1. Some are *Males.*
2. Some are *Fœmales.*
3. Some are neither *Males* nor *Fœmales.*
ſo accordingly of the words which betoken theſe things,
I. Some are of the *Maſculine* Gender.
II. Some are of the *Fœminine* Gender.
III. Some are of the *Neuter* Gender.

570. N.B. *Before words of the* { Maſculine / Fœminine / Neuter } *Gender we ſet* { Hic / Hæc / Hoc } *as a mark to know them by.*

Q. *Which*

Qu. *Which words are of the* Maſculine *Gender?*

571. *Anſ.* All Subſtantives, that ſignifiy things that are Males, are of the *Maſculine* Gender, as

Hic	Mas	*A Male.*	Hic	Equus	*An Horſe.*
Hic	Vir	*A Man.*	Hic	Aſinus	*An Hee-Aſs.*
Hic	Adamus	*Adam.*	Hic	Agnus	*An Hee-Lamb.*
Hic	Magiſter	*A Maſter.*	Hic	Lupus	*An Hee-Wolf.*
Hic	Pater	*A Father.*	Hic	Rex	*A King.*
Hic	Filius	*A Son.*	Hic	Puer	*A Boy.*

Qu. *Which words are of the* Fœminine *Gender?*

572. *Anſ.* All Subſtantives that betoken things, that are Females, are of the *Feminine* Gender, as

Hæc	Fœmina	*A Female.*	Hæc	Equa	*A Mare.*
Hæc	Mulier	*A Woman.*	Hæc	Aſina	*A Shee-Aſs.*
Hæc	Eva	*Eve.*	Hæc	Agna	*An Ew-Lamb.*
Hæc	Magiſtra	*A Miſtris.*	Hæc	Lupa	*A Shee-Wolf.*
Hæc	Mater	*A Mother.*	Hæc	Regīna	*A Queen.*
Hæc	Filia	*A Daughter.*	Hæc	Puella	*A Girl.*

Qu. *Are there no words of both the* Maſculine *and* Feminine *Gender?*

573. *Anſ.* All thoſe Subſtantives that betoken both the Male and the Female are of (the *Common of two*, that is, they are of) both the *Maſculine* and *Feminine* Gender, as

Hic & Hæc	Parens	*A Parent.*	Hic & Hæc	Hæres	*An Heir.*
Hic & Hæc	Fur	*A Thief.*	Hic & Hæc	Cuſtos	*A Keeper.*
Hic & Hæc	Dux	*A Guide.*	Hic & Hæc	Sus	*An Hog.*

So Hic Parens is *an Hee-Parent* or *a Father*, Hæc Parens *a Shee-Parent* or *a Mother*. Hic Fur *an HeeThief*, Hæc Fur *a Shee Thief*, &c.

Qu. *Which words are of the* Neuter *Gender?*

574. *Anſ.* All thoſe Subſtantives that betoken a thing that is neither Male nor Female ſhould be of the *Neuter* Gender.

Qu. *Are not all ſuch of the* Neuter *Gender as they ſhould be?*

575. *Anſ.* Many ſuch are of the *Neuter* Gender: as thoſe words that end in *um*, *e* & *men*, in *ar*, *ur* & *us*, and many others, as.

Hoc	Templum	*A Temple.*	Hoc	Nomen	*A Name.*
Hoc	Bellum	*War.*	Hoc	Carmen	*A Song.*
Hoc	Saxum	*A Stone.*	Hoc	Fulmen	*A Thunderbolt.*
Hoc	Rete	*A Net.*	Hoc	Caput	*An Head.*
Hoc	Cubīle	*A Lodging.*	Hoc	Tempus	*Time.*
Hoc	Altāre	*An Altar.*	Hoc	Litus	*A Shore.*

Hoc

Hoc	Jubar	*A Sunbeam.*	Hoc	Marmor	*Marble.*
Hoc	Calcar	*A Spur.*	Hoc	Animal	*A Live creature.*
Hoc	Jecur	*The Liver.*	Hoc	Lac	*Milk,*

But of theſe words which ſhould have been Neuters,

576. I. Some are *Maſculines* as moſt ending in *er*, *or* and *us*, and many others, as

Hic	Liber	*A Book.*	Hic	Lapis	*A Stone.*
Hic	Ager	*A Field.*	Hic	Sermo	*A Speech.*
Hic	Honor	*Honour.*	Hic	Paries	*A Wall.*
Hic	Labor	*Labour.*	Hic	Poſtis	*A Poſt.*
Hic	Fructus	*Fruit.*	Hic	Orbis	*A Round Trencher.*
Hic	Calamus	*A Reed.*	Hic	Ordo	*Order,* &c.

577. II. Some are *Feminines*, as all in *a*, and many others, as

Hæc	Muſa	*A Song.*	Hæc	Dictio	*A Phraſe.*
Hæc	Terra	*The Land.*	Hæc	Laus	*Praiſe.*
Hæc	Littĕra	*A Letter.*	Hæc	Manus	*An Hand,* &c.

578. III. Some are *Doubtful*, being ſometimes uſed in the Maſculine, and ſometimes in the Feminine, as

Hic Dies *or* Hæc Dies *A Day.* | Hic *or* Hæc Finis *An End.*

N. B. *The Subſtantives* { Maſculine, Feminine, Common, Neuter, Doubtful } are in this book marked with { m. f. c. n. d. }

Qu. *Now ſay, Of what Gender are each of theſe words following?*

Anna	*Anne.*	Canis	*A Dog* or *Bitch.*
Georgius	*George.*	Sulfur	*Brimſtone.*
Poĕta	*A Poet.*	Crimen	*A Crime.*
Uxor	*A Wife.*	Teſtis	*A Witneſs he or ſhe.*
Damnum	*Loſs.*	Anus	*An Old woman.*
Menſa	*A Table.*	Doctor.	*A Teacher.*

579. *Anſ.* —

Of

Of the Genders of Adjectives.

Qu. *Of what Gender are Adjectives?*

580. *Anſ.* All Words, that are Adjectives, are of all the three Genders, as

Hic Fœlix Hæc Fœlix Hoc Fœlix } *Happy.*	Hic Suavis Hæc Suavis Hoc Suave } *Sweet.*	Hic Bonus Hæc Bona Hoc Bonum } *Good.*
Hic Audax Hæc Audax Hoc Audax } *Bold.*	Hic Triſtis Hæc Triſtis Hoc Triſte } *Sad.*	Hic Malus Hæc Mala Hoc Malum } *Bad.*

II. *Of the Six Caſes.*

Qu. *How many* Caſes *are there?*

581. *Anſ.* Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles are declined with Six *Caſes*, that is, they have Six divers Endings both in the Singular and in the Plural Number, which divers Endings be called *Caſes.*

Qu. *How are theſe Six Caſes named?*

582. *Anſ.* The First, The Second, The Third, The Fourth, The Fifth, The Sixth } Ending is called { The *Nominative*, The *Vocative*, The *Genitive*, The *Dative*, The *Accuſative*, The *Ablative* } Caſe.

III. *Of*

III. *Of the Five Declensions.*

Qu. *How many ways are Nouns, Pronouns and Participles declined?*

583. *Ans.* Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles are declined five several ways, which are called the *Five Declensions.* For some are declined after the First way, some after the second, some after the third, &c.

Qu. *How may it be known of which Declension any word is?*

584. *Ans.* Every word whose Genitive case ends in { æ, i, ĭs, ūs, ēi } is of the { First, Second, Third, Fourth, Fifth } Declension.

---

§ I. *Of the First Declension.*

Qu. *How are words of the* First Declension *declined?*

585. *Ans.* Words of the *First* Declension have their

Nominative	of the Singular Number in	ă	*Nominative*	in the Plural Number in	æ
Vocative		ă	*Vocative*		æ
Genitive		æ	*Genitive*		ārum
Dative		æ	*Dative*		īs
Accusative		am	*Accusative*		ās
Ablative		ā	*Ablative*		ĭs

586. N. B. *The Vocative is the same with the Nominative, and the Ablative Plural the same with the Dative Plural always.*

Qu. *Give me some* **Exemples** *of words thus declined?*

587. *Ans.* Here follow **Exemples** of three sorts.

1. *Exemples of words of two Syllables.*

Singular.	*Nom.*	Hæc	Mus-a *a Song*	*Plural*	*Nom.* Mus-æ *Songs.*
	Voc.	O	Mus-a *o Song*		*Voc.* ô Mus-æ *o Songs.*
	Gen.		Mus-æ *of a Song*		*Gen.* Mus-ārum *of Songs.*
	Dat.		Mus-æ *to a Song*		*Dat.* Mus-īs *to Songs.*
	Ac.		Mus-am *a Song*		*Ac.* Mus-ās *Songs.*
	Ab.		Mus-â *by a Song*		*Ab.* Mus-īs *by Songs.*

Some words of the first Decl: end in as, Share their Voc. in as

n: Tobi-as
v. Tobi-a
g. Tobi-æ
D: Tobi-æ
A: Tobi-am
Ab: Tobi-â

So

So decline words of two Syllables in *a*. ſuch are,

Hæc Menſa.	Hæc Terra.	Hæc Umbra.
Hic Nauta.	Hæc Luna.	Hæc Flamma.
Hæc Aqua.	Hæc Stella.	Hæc Pruna.

588. 2. *Exemples of words of more than two Syllables of which the laſt but one is long.*

Singular	*Nom.*	Hæc Balēn-a *a whale.*	*Plural*	*Nom.*	Balen-æ *whales.*
	Voc.	ô Balen-a *o whale.*		*Voc.*	ô Balen-æ *o whales.*
	Gen.	Balen-æ *of a whale.*		*Gen.*	Balen-ārum *of whales.*
	Dat.	Balēn-æ *to a whale.*		*Dat.*	Balen-is *to whales.*
	Ac.	Balen-ām *a whale.*		*Ac.*	Balen-as *whales.*
	Ab.	Balen-ā *by a whale.*		*Ab.*	Balen-is *by whales.*

So *decline* Scintilla, Favilla, Arēna.
Lactūca, Avēna, Medulla.
Locuſta, Anguilla, Gallīna

And the reſt ſet down in the Book that have the laſt but one long.

589. 3. *Exemples of words of more than two Syllables, of which the laſt Syllable but one is ſhort.*

Singular	*Nom.*	Hæc Anĭm-a *the Soul*	*Plural*	*Nom.*	Anim-æ *the Souls.*
	Voc.	ô Anim-a *o the Soul*		*Voc.*	ò Anim-æ *o Souls.*
	Gen.	Anim-æ *of the Soul*		*Gen.*	Anim-ārum *of the Souls.*
	Dat,	Anim-æ *to the Soul*		*Dat.*	Anim-īs *to the Souls.*
	Ac.	Anim-am *the Soul*		*Ac.*	Anim-ās *the Souls.*
	Ab.	Anim-â *by the Soul*		*Ab.*	Anim-īs *by the Souls.*

So *decline* Nebŭla, Glarĕa, Beſtĭa.
Pluvĭa, Tegŭla, Araněa.
Minĕra, Caſtaněa, Vipĕra.

and the reſt that have the laſt Syllable ſave one ſhort.

§ II. *Of the Second Declension.*

Qu. *How are words of the* Second Declension *declined?*

590. *Ans.* Those words are of the *Second Declension* whose

Nom.	Singular ends in	ŭs, ĕr, *or* ŭm.	*Nom.*	Plural in	i a. Nut a
Voc.		ĕ, ĕr, ŭm.	*Voc.*		i a. Nut a
Gen.		ī.	*Gen.*		ōrum.
Dat.		ō.	*Dat.*		īs.
Ac.		ūm.	*Ac.*		ōs a. Nut a
Ab.		ō.	*Ab.*		īs.

591. N. B. *when the Nominative endeth in* us *in the Second Declension, the Vocative Singular endeth in* e. Except 1 Deus Voc. Deus

Qu. *Give me some Exemples of words thus declined?*

592. *Ans.* Here follow **Exemples** of words of the Second Declension. 2 Proper names in ius are contracted for i. e making i as Georgius Vo. Georgi Ovidius Vo. Ovidi. 3 Virgilius Vo. O Virgili for Virgilie So are Filius Voc. O Fili Genius Voc. Geni e meus Voc. mi for mee

I. *Words in* us.

Singular	*Nom.*	Hic Mund-us *the world.*	*Plural*	*Nom.*	Mund-i *the worlds.*
	Voc.	ô Munde *o World.*		*Voc.*	ó Mund-i *o Worlds.*
	Gen.	Mund-i *of the world.*		*Gen.*	Mund-ŏrum *of the Worlds*
	Dat.	Mund-o *to the world.*		*Dat.*	Mund-īs *to the worlds.*
	Ac.	Mund-um *the world.*		*Ac.*	Mund-ōs *the worlds.*
	Ab.	Mund-o *by the world.*		*Ab.*	Mund-īs *by the worlds.*

So decline *Ventus, Fumus, Rivus, Campus, Succus, Scrupus, Rubus, Malus, Pyrus,* and others of two Syllables.

Singular	*Nom.*	Crystall-us *Crystal.*	*Plural*	*Nom.*	Crystall-i *Crystals.*
	Voc.	Crystall-e *o Crystal.*		*Voc.*	Crystall-i *o Crystals.*
	Gen.	Crystall-i *of Crystal.*		*Gen.*	Crystall-ōrum *of Crystals.*
	Dat.	Crystall-o *to Crystal.*		*Dat.*	Crystall-is *to Crystals.*
	Ac.	Crystall-um *Crystal.*		*Ac.*	Crystall-os *Crystals.*
	Ab.	Crystall-o *by Crystal.*		*Ab.*	Crystall-is *by Crystals.*

So decline *Sapphīrus, Rubīnus, Cupressus, Lumbrīcus, Columbus, Phasiānus, Camēlus, Capillus, Adāmus,* and others like.

Singular

Singular	*Nom.*	Hic Angĕl-us *an Angel.*	Plural	*Nom.*	Angel-i *Angels.*
	Voc.	--e *O-*		*Voc.* ô	-i *o-*
	Gen.	--i *of an-*		*Gen.*	ōrum *of-*
	Dat.	--o *to an-*		*Dat.*	-is *to-*
	Ac.	--um *an-*		*Ac.*	-os *Angels.*
	Ab.	--o *by an-*		*Ab.*	-is *by-*

So decline Diabŏlus, Fluvĭus, Oceănus, Scopŭlus, Calămus, Corylus, &c.

593. II. *Words in* er.

Singular	*Nom.*	Hic Puer *a Boy.*	Plural	*Nom.*	Puĕr-i *Boys.*
	Voc.	ô Puer *o Boy.*		*Voc.*	Puĕr-i *o Boys.*
	Gen.	Puĕr-i *of a Boy.*		*Gen.*	Puĕr-ōrum *of Boys.*
	Dat.	Puĕr-o *to a Boy.*		*Dat.*	Puĕr-is *to Boys.*
	Ac.	Puĕr-um *a Boy.*		*Ac.*	Puĕr-os *Boys.*
	Ab.	Puĕr-o *by a Boy.*		*Ab.*	Puĕr-is *by Boys.*

So decline Adūlter, Socer *a Father in Law,* Gener *a Son in Law,* Presbyter, &c.

Singular	*Nom.*	Hic Lib-er *a Book.*	Plural	*Nom.*	Libr-i *Books.*
	Voc.	ô Lib-er *o Book.*		*Voc.*	Lib-ri *o Books.*
	Gen.	Lib-ri *of a Book.*		*Gen.*	Libr-ōrum *of Books.*
	Dat.	Lib-ro *to a Book.*		*Dat.*	Lib-ris *to Books.*
	Ac.	Lib-rum *a Book.*		*Ac.*	Lib-ros *Books.*
	Ab.	Lib-ro *by a Book.*		*Ab.*	Lib-ris *by Books.*

So decline Faber, Cancer, Ager, Culter.

Singular	*Nom.*	Hic Magiſt-er *a Maſter.*	Plural	*Nom.*	Magiſt-ri *Maſters.*
	Voc.	Magiſt-er *o* --		*Voc.*	Magiſt-ri *o* --
	Gen.	Magiſt-ri *of* --		*Gen.*	Magiſt-rōrum *of* --
	Dat.	Magiſt-ro *to* --		*Dat.*	Magiſt-ris *to* --
	Ac.	Magiſt-rum *a* --		*Ac.*	Magiſt-ros *Maſters.*
	Ab.	Magiſt-ro *by* --		*Ab.*	Magiſt-ris *by* --

So decline Miniſter, &c.

594. III. *Words in* um.

Singular	*Nom.*	Hoc Regn-um *a Kingdom*	*Plural*	*Nom.*	Regn-a *Kingdoms.*
	Voc.	o --um *o* --		*Voc.*	o -a *o* --
	Gen.	-i *of a* --		*Gen.*	-ōrum *of* --
	Dat.	-o *to a* --		*Dat.*	-īs *to* --
	Ac.	-um *a* --		*Ac.*	-a ---
	Ab.	-o *by a* --		*Ab.*	-īs *by* --

So decline Saxum, granum, Lignum, Pomum, Malum, Pyrum, &c.

Qu. *What is to be noted concerning words in* um, *and others of the Neuter Gender?*

595. *Anſ.* It is to be noted, that all words of the Neuter Gender, of what Declenſion ſoever they be, have their Nominative, Vocative and Accuſative alike in each Number, and in the Plural theſe three Caſes end in *a*.

So decline Metallum, Habitacŭlum, Vehicŭlum, alimentum, *and all that end in* um.

Adjectives of the Firſt and Second Declenſion.

Qu. *What Adjectives are of the Firſt and Second Declenſion?*

596. *Anſ.* Adjectives in *us*, *a*, *um*, and in *er*, *a*, *um*, are of the Firſt and Second Declenſion, and are thus declined.

I. *Exemples of Adjectives in* us, a, um.

		m.	f.	n.		m.	f.	n.
Singular	*Nom.*	Bon-us	Bon-a	Bon-um	*Plural*	*N.* Bon-i	Bon-æ	Bon-a
	Voc.	Bon-e	Bon-a	Bon-um		*V.* Bon-i	Bon-æ	Bon-a
	Gen.	Bon-i	Bon-æ	Bon-i		*G.* Bon-ōrum	Bon-ārum	Bon-ōrū
	Dat.	Bon-o	Bon-æ	Bon-o		*D.* Bon-is	Bon-is	Bon-is
	Ac.	Bon-um	Bon-am	Bon-um		*A.* Bon-os	Bon-as	Bon-a
	Ab.	Bon-o	Bon-â	Bon-o		*A.* Bon-is	Bon-is	Bon-is

597. N. B. *Where obſerve that the Maſculine and Neuter Genders are of the Second Declenſion, and the Feminine of the Firſt.*

So decline Quant-us-a-um, Quot-us-a-um, Tant-us-a-um, Mal-us-a-um, Van-us-a-um, Grat-us-a-um, &c. *But* Me-us-a-um *hath in the Vocative Caſe* Mi, mea, meum.

Singular

		m.	f.	n.
Singular	*Nom.*	Jucund-us	-a	-um
	Voc.	Jucund-e	-a	-um
	Gen.	Jucund-i	-æ	-i
	Dat.	Jucund-o	-æ-	-o
	Ac.	Jucund-um	-am	-um
	Ab.	Jucund-o	-a	-o

		m.	f.	n.
Plural	*Nom.*	Jucund-i	-æ	-a
	Voc.	Jucund-i	-æ	-a
	Gen.	Jucund-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
	Dat.	Jucund-is	-is	-is
	Ac.	Jucund-os	-as	-a
	Ab.	Jucund-is	-is	-is

So decline Diverſus, Ingrātus, Moleſtus, Invīſus, Æternus, Profundus, &c.

598. II. *Exemples of Adjectives in* er, a, um.

		m.	f.	n.
Singular	*Nom.*	Lib-ĕr	-ĕra	-ĕrum
	Voc.	-ĕr	-ĕra	-ĕrum
	Gen.	-ĕri	-ĕræ	-ĕri
	Dat.	-ĕro	-ĕræ	-ĕro
	Ac.	-ĕrum	-ĕram	-ĕrum
	Ab.	-ĕro	-ĕra	-ĕro

		m.	f.	n.
Plural	*Nom.*	Lib-ĕri	-ĕræ	-ĕra
	Voc.	-ĕri	-ĕræ	-ĕra
	Gen.	-ĕrōrum	-ĕrārum	-ĕrōrum
	Dat.	-ĕris	-ĕris	-ĕris
	Ac.	-ĕros	-ĕras	-ĕra
	Ab.	-ĕris	-ĕris	-ĕris

So are declined Ten-ĕr-ĕra-ĕrum, Dext-er-era-rum, Aſp-er-era-erum.

		m.	f.	n.
Singular	*Nom.*	Sac-er	-ra	-rum
	Voc.	-er	-ra	-rum
	Gen.	-ri	-ræ	-ri
	Dat.	-ro	-ræ	-ro
	Ac.	-rum	-ram	-rum
	Ab.	-ro	-ra	-ro

		m.	f.	n.
Plural	*Nom.*	Sac-ri	-ræ	-ra
	Voc.	-ri	-ræ	-ra
	Gen.	-rōrum	-rārum	-rōrum
	Dat.	-ris	-ris	-ris
	Ac.	-ros	-ras	-ra
	Ab.	-ris	-ris	-ris

So decline Rub-er-ra-rum, Creb-er-ra-rum, Pulch-er-ra-rum, &c.

Qu. *Are all Adjectives in* us, a, um, *and* er, a, um *thus declined?*

599. *Anſ.* There are certain Adjectives of another manner of declining in the Genitive and Dative Caſe Singular, which make the Genitive in *ius*, and the Dative in *i*, which be theſe Nine that follow, *unus*, *totus*, *ſolus*, *ullus*, *nullus*, *alius*, *alter*, *uter*, *neuter*.

		m.	f.	n.
Singular	*Nom.*	Un-us	-a	-um
	Voc.	-e	-a	-um
	Gen.	-ius	-ius	-ius
	Dat.	-i	-i	-i
	Ac.	-um	-am	-um
	Ab.	-o	-a	-o

		m.	f.	n.
Plural	*Nom.*	Un-i	-æ	-a
	Voc.	-i	-æ	-a
	Gen.	-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
	Dat.	-is	-is	-is
	Ac.	-os	-as	-a
	Ab.	-is	-is	-is

Singular	*Nom.*	Alt-er	-ĕra	ĕrum
	Voc.	Alt-er	-ĕra	-ĕrum
	Gen.	Alter-ius	-ius	-ius
	Dat.	Altĕr-i	-i	-i
	Ac.	Alter-um	-am	-um
	Ab.	Alter-o	-a	-o &c.

Singular	*Nom.*	'Ali-us	-a	-ud
	Voc.			
	Gen.	Al-îus	-ius	-îus
	Dat.	Ali-i	-i	-i
	Ac.	Ali-um	-am	-ud
	Ab.	Ali-o	-a	-o &c.

Singular	*Nom.*	Ut-er	-ra	-rum
	Voc.			
	Gen.	-rius	-rius	-rius
	Dat.	-ri	-ri	-ri
	Ac.	-rum	-ram	-rum
	Ab.	-ro	-ra	-ro &c.

Q. *Are there no more* Adjectives *thus declined?*

600. *Anſ.* Theſe Pronouns, *Quid*, *Quis*, *Qui*, *Ille*, *Ipſe*, *Iſte*, *Hic* and *Is*, have alſo their Genitive Singular in *ius*, and their Dative in *i*.

Singular	*Nom.*	Quis	Quæ	Quod
	Voc.			
	Gen.	Cujus	Cujus	Cujus
	Dat.	Cui	Cui	Cui
	Ac.	Quem	Quam	Quod
	Ab.	Quo	Qua	Quo *or* Quî

Plural	*Nom.*	Qui	Quæ	Quæ
	Voc.			
	Gen.	Quorum	Quarū	Quorum
	Dat.	Queis *or* Quibus		
	Ac.	Quos	Quas	Quæ
	Ab.	Queis *or* Quibus		

So decline Qui quæ, quod, *and hoc* Quid, *and* Quidam, Quædam, Quoddam, *and* Aliquis.

Singular	*Nom.*	Ille	Illa	Illud
	Voc.			
	Gen.	Illius	Illius	Illius
	Dat.	Illi	Illi	Illi
	Ac.	Illum	Illam	Illud
	Ab.	Illo	Illa	Illo

Plural	*Nom.*	Illi	Illæ	Illa
	Voc.			
	Gen.	Illorum	Illarum	Illorum
	Dat.	Illis	Illis	Illis
	Ac.	Illos	Illas	Illa
	Ab.	Illis	Illis	Illis

So *decline* Iſte, Iſta, Iſtud, Ipſe, Ipſa, Ipſum.

Singular	Nom.	Is	Ea	Id
	Voc.			
	Gen.	Ejus	Ejus	Ejus
	Dat.	Ei	Ei	Ei
	Ac.	Eum	Eam	Id
	Ab.	Eo	Ea	Eo

Plural	Nom.	Ii	Eæ	Ea
	Voc.			
	Gen.	Eorum	Earum	Eorum
	Dat.	Eis *or* Iis, &c.		
	Ac.	Eos	Eas	Ea
	Ab.	Eis *or* Iis, &c.		

Singular	Nom.	Idem	Eadem	Idem
	Voc.	Idem	Eadem	Idem
	Gen.	Ejuſdem	Ejuſdem	Ejuſdē
	Dat.	Eidem	E dem	Eidem
	Ac.	Eundem	Eandem	Idem
	Ab.	Eodem	Eadem	Eodem

Plural	N.	Iidem	Eædem	Eadem
	V.	Iidem	Eædem	Eadem
	G.	Eorundē	Earundem	Eorundē
	D.	Iiſdem *or* Eiſdem, &c.		
	A.	Eoſdem	Eaſdem	Eadem
	A.	Iiſdem *or* Eiſdem, &c.		

Singular.	Nom.	Hic	Hæc	Hoc
	Voc.			
	Gen.	Hujus	Hujus	Hujus
	Dat.	Huic	Huic	Huic
	Ac.	Hunc	Hanc	Hoc
	Ab.	Hōc	Hāc	Hōc

Plural	Nom.	Hi	Hæ	Hæc
	Voc.			
	Gen.	Horum	Harum	Horum
	Dat.	Hīs	Hīs	Hīs
	Ac.	Hōs	Hās	Hæc
	Ab.	Hīs	Hīs	Hīs

Qu. *Are there yet no more* Adjectives *otherwiſe declined?*

601. *Anſ.* There are two more *Adjectives* Ambo *Both*, and Duo *Two*, which, becauſe they always betoken more than one, want the Singular Number, and in the Plural, are thus declined.

Plural	Nom.	Ambo	-æ	-o
	Voc.	-o	-æ	-o
	Gen.	-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
	Dat.	-ōbus	-ābus	-ōbus
	Ac.	-ōs	-ās	-o
	Ab.	-ōbus	-ābus	ōbus

Plural	N.	Duo	Duæ	Duo
	V.	Duo	Duæ	Duo
	G.	Duōrum	Duārum	Duōrum
	D.	Duōbus	Duābus	Duōbus
	A.	Duōs	Duās	Duo
	A.	Duōbus	Duābus	Duōbus

These two ambo & duo are both duals that is they are of the dual Number of the Greeks

§ III. *Of the Third Declenſion.*

Qu. *Which words are of the* Third Declenſion?

602. *Anſ.* All words ending in *e*, *o*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *x*, are of the *Third* Declenſion, and moſt in *r*, and *s*.

Qu. *How are words of the* Third Declenſion *declined?*

603. *Anſ.* Words of the *Third Declenſion* have their

Nom.	Singular in	e, o, l, &c.		*Nom.*	Plural in	es, Neut. a.	
Voc.		e, o, l, &c.		*Voc.*		es,	a.
Gen.		is.		*Gen.*		um.	
Dat.		i.		*Dat.*		ĭbus.	
Ac.		em.		*Ac.*		es,	a.
Ab.		e.		*Ab.*		ĭbus.	

Qu. *How many different ways are words of the* Third Declenſion *declined?*

604. *Anſ.* Words of the *Third Declenſion* are declined three different ways;

I. Some do not *increaſe* in the Genitive Singular, as, Mare, Maris.

II. Some do *increaſe* in the Genitive Caſe, with their laſt Syllable but one long, as, Virtus, Virtūtis.

III. Some do *increaſe* in the Genitive, with their laſt Syllable ſave one ſhort, as, Lapis, Lapĭdis.

Qu. *What is it to* Increaſe *in the Genitive?*

605. *Anſ.* To *increaſe* is to have more Syllables in the Genitive then were in the Nominative, as, Virtus *Gen.* Virtūtis, Lapis *Gen.* Lapĭdis. And not to *increaſe* is to have no more Syllables in the Genitive then in the Nominative, as Mare *Gen.* Maris.

I. *Exemples of words not increaſing.*

Qu. *Which words are they that do not increaſe?*

606. *Anſ.* All words ending in *e*, and many in *es* and *is*, and theſe make the Genitive Plural in *ium*.

Exemples in e.

Singular	*Nom.*	Hoc	Ret-e *a Net*	Plural	*Nom.*		Ret-ia *Nets*
	Voc.	O	Ret-e *o Net*		*Voc.*	O	Ret-ia *o Nets*
	Gen.		Ret-is *of a Net*		*Gen.*		Ret-ium *of Nets*
	Dat.		Ret-i *to a Net*		*Dat.*		Ret-ĭbus *to Nets*
	Ac.		Ret-e *a Net*		*Ac.*		Ret-ia *nets*
	Ab.		Ret-i *by a Net*		*Ab.*		Ret-ĭbus *by Nets*

607. N. B.

607. N. B. *When the Nominative ends in* e, *the Ablative ſingular ends in* i, *the Nominative Plural in* ia, *the Genitive in* ium.
So decline Mare, Cubīle, Conclāve, Cochleāre, Collāre, &c.

608. *Exemples in* es.

Singular	*Nom.*	Hæc Nub-es	Plural	*Nom.*	Nub-es
	Voc.	-es		*Voc.*	-es
	Gen.	-is		*Gen.*	-ium
	Dat.	-i		*Dat.*	-ibus
	Ac.	-em		*Ac.*	-es
	Ab.	-e		*Ab.*	-ibus

So decline Rupes, Vulpes, Fames, Sedes, Torques, &c.

609. *Exemples in* is.

Sing.	*Nom.*	Hæc Peſt-is
	Voc.	-is
	Gen.	-is &c.

So decline Vallis, Veſtis, Hic Collis, Follis, Enſis, Menſis, Panis, &c.

610. *Adjectives in* is, is, e.

		m.	f.	n.			m.	f.	n.
Singular	*Nom.*	Triſt-is	-is	-e	Plural	*Nom.*	Triſt-es	-es	-ia
	Voc.	-is	-is	-e		*Voc.*	-es	-es	-ia
	Gen.	-is	-is	-is		*Gen.*	-ium	-ium	-ium
	Dat.	-i	-i	-i		*Dat.*	-ĭbus	-ĭbus	-ĭbus
	Ac.	-em	-em	-e		*Ac.*	-es	-es	-ia
	Ab.	-i	-i	-i		*Ab.*	-ĭbus	-ĭbus	-ĭbus

Thus are declined Qualis, Talis, Similis, Utilis, Rudis, Viridis, &c.
So Ac-er -ris -re.
Septemb-er-ris -re.

611. II. *Exemples of words that increaſe long.*

Singular	*Nom.*	Cal ŏr *Heat*	*Plural*	Cal-ōres
	Voc.	-ŏr		-ōres
	Gen.	-ōris		-ōrum
	Dat.	-ōri		-oribus
	Ac.	-ōrem		-ōres
	Ab.	-ōre		-oribus

Singular	*Nom.*	Serm-o *a Speech*	*Plural*	Serm-ōnes
	Voc.	-o		-ōnes
	Gen.	-ōnis		-ōnum
	Dat.	-ōni		-ōnĭbus
	Ac.	-ōnem		-ōnes
	Ab.	-ōne		-ōnĭbus

So decline Paſt-or -ōris, Doct-or -ōris, Le-o ōnis, Virt-ūs ūtis, Piet-as -ātis, Adam-as antis, Par-ens entis Inſan-s tis, Nepo-s tis, Mo-s ris, Ru-s ris.

612. *Adjectives that increaſe long.*

		m.	f.	n.		m.	f.	n.
Singular	*N.*	Fœlix	Fœlix	Fœlix	*Plural*	*N.* Fœlices	Fœlices	Fœlicia
	V.	Fœlix	Fœlix	Fœlix		*V.* Fœlices	Fœlices	Fœlicia
	G.	Fœlīcis	Fœlīcis	Fœlīcis		*G.* Fœlicium	Fœlicium	Fœlicium
	D.	Fœlici	Fœlīci	Fœlīci		*D.* Fœlicibus	Fœlicibus	Fœlicibus
	A.	Fœlicem	Fœlicem	Fœlix		*A.* Fœlices	Fœlices	Fœlicia
	A.	Fœlice *or* Fœlici, &c.				*A.* Fœlicibus	Fœlicibus	Fœlicibus

So are declined Cuj-as -as -as -ātis, Noſtras, Veſtras, Audā-x -x -x -cis, Velō-x -x -x -cis, Aman-s -tis, Recen-s -tis.

613. III. *Exemples of words increaſing ſhort.*

Singular	*Nom.*	Hic Lap-ĭs *a Stone*	*Plural*	*Nom.*	Lap-ĭdes *Stones*
	Voc.	-is *o-*		*Voc.*	-ĭdes *o-*
	Gen.	-ĭdis *of-*		*Gen.*	-ĭdum *of-*
	Dat.	-ĭdi *to-*		*Dat.*	-ĭdĭbus *to-*
	Ac.	-ĭdem *a-*		*Ac.*	-ĭdes *Stones*
	Ab.	-ĭde *by a-*		*Ab.*	-ĭdĭbus *by-*

So decline Paſſĕr -is, Tud-es -ĭtis, Poll-ex -ĭcis, Equ-es -ĭtis, Ped-es -ĭtis, Pulvĕr- is, Mil-es -ĭtis.

Singular	*Nom.*	Hoc Corp-us *a Body.*	*Plural*	*Nom.*	Corp-ŏra
	Voc.	-us		*Voc.*	-ŏra
	Gen.	-ŏris		*Gen.*	-ŏrum
	Dat.	-ŏri		*Dat.*	-ŏribus
	Ac.	-us		*Ac.*	-ŏra
	Ab.	ŏre		*Ab.*	-ŏrĭbus

Singular	*Nom.*	Hæc Virg-o	*Plural*	*Nom.*	Virg-ĭnes
	Voc.	-o		*Voc.*	-ĭnes
	Gen.	-ĭnis		*Gen.*	-ĭnum
	Dat.	-ĭni		*Dat.*	-ĭnibus
	Ac.	-ĭnem		*Ac.*	-ĭnes
	Ab.	-ĭne		*Ab.*	-ĭnibus

So decline Hoc Tempu-s -ŏris, hoc Nom-en -ĭnis, hæc Ord-o -ĭnis, &c.

614. *So* Later Latĕris *but moſt Nouns in* ter *caſt off the ſhort* e, *and make* tris, *as* Vent-er -ris, Pat-er -ris, Mat-er -ris.

615. *Adjectives increaſing ſhort.*

		m.	f	n.			m.	f.	n.
Singular	*N.*	Impar	Impar	Impar	*Plural*	*N.*	Impares	Impares	Imparia
	V.	Impar	Impar	Impar		*V.*	Impares	Impares	Imparia
	G.	Impăris	Impăris	Impăris		*G.*	Imparium	Imparium	Imparĭū
	D.	Impari	Impari	Impari		*D.*	Imparibus	Imparibus	Imparib.
	A.	Imparem	Imparem	Impar		*A.*	Impares	Impares	Imparia
	A.	Impare *or* Impari &c.				*A.*	Imparibus	Imparibus	Imparib.

So decline Par, Clcur, *and* Vetus Veteris *Plur.* Veter-es -es -a, *Gen.* -um, Præcox, Præcŏcis,

§ IV. *Of the Fourth Declenſion.*

Qu. *Which words are of the* Fourth Declenſion?

616. *Anſ.* Words of the *Fourth* Declenſion are ſuch whoſe

Nominative	Singular ends in	ŭs	*Nominative*	Plural in	ūs
Vocative		ŭs	*Vocative*		ūs
Genitive		ūs	*Genitive*		uum
Dative		ui	*Dative*		ĭbus
Accuſative		um	*Accuſative*		ūs
Ablative		u	*Ablative*		ĭbus

Exemples in us.

Singŭlar	*Nom.*	Hic Fruct-ŭs *Fruit*	Plural	*Nom.*	Fruct-ūs
	Voc.	-ŭs		*Voc.*	-ūs
	Gen.	-ūs		*Gen.*	-uum
	Dat.	-ui		*Dat.*	-ĭbus
	Ac.	-ūm		*Ac.*	-us
	Ab.	-ū		*Ab.*	-ĭbus

So decline Hic Spiritus, Hæc Lacus, Hæc Ficus, Hæc Quercus, Hæc Manus, Hic Auditus, Viſus, &c.

617. N. B. *There are alſo ſome few Nouns in* u, *which in the Singular are in all Caſes alike, thus.*

Singŭlar	*Nom.*	Hoc Corn-u	Plural	*Nom.*	Corn-ua
	Voc.	-u		*Voc.*	-ua
	Gen.	-u		*Gen.*	-uum
	Dat.	-u		*Dat.*	-ĭbus
	Ac.	-u		*Ac.*	-ua
	Ab.	-u		*Ab.*	-ĭbus

So are declined Genu *a Knee*, Gelu *a Froſt.*

§ V. *Of*

§ V. *Of the Fifth Declenſion.*

Qu. *How is the* Fifth Declenſion *known?*

618. *Anſ.* Words of the *Fifth Declenſion* have their

Nominative	Singular in	es	*Nominative*	Plural in	es
Vocative		es	*Vocative*		es
Genitive		ēi	*Genitive*		ērum
Dative		ēi	*Dative*		ēbus
Accuſative		em	*Accuſative*		es
Ablative		ē	*Ablative*		ēbus

Exemples

Singular	*Nom.*	Hæc Faci-es *the Face*	*Plural*	*Nom.*	Faci-es *Faces*
	Voc.	ô Faci-es *o Face*		*Voc.*	Faci-es *o-*
	Gen.	Faci-ēi *of the-*		*Gen.*	Faci-ērum *of-*
	Dat.	Faci-ēi *to the-*		*Dat.*	Faci-ēbus *to-*
	Ac.	Faci-em *the-*		*Ac.*	Faci-es *the-*
	Ab.	Faci-e *by the-*		*Ab.*	Faci-ēbus *by the-*

So decline Dies, Meridies, *and* Res, Spes, Fides, *only theſe three laſt have* e *ſhort in the Genitive and Dative Singular.*

Qu. *Thus you have learned the Five ways of declining Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles, now tell me of which Declenſion are each of theſe words following.*

Domin-us -ī	Aci-es -ēi	Sor-or -ōris	Atro-x-x-x -cis
Card-o -ĭnis	Penn-a -æ	Cult-er -ri	Mortal-is -is -e
Suav-is -is -e	Stult-us -a -um	Tumult-ŭs -ūs	Cann-a -æ

619. *Anſ.* —

The ending of each Caſe in each Declenſion.

		I. Dec.	II. Dec.	III. Dec.	IV. Dec.	V. Dec.
Singular	*No.*	a	us, er, um.	e, o, l, n, r, s, t, x.	us, u.	es.
	Vo.	a	e, er, um.	e, o, l, n, r, s, t, x.	us, u.	es.
	Ge.	æ	i.	is.	ūs u.	ēi.
	Da.	æ	o.	i.	ui, u.	ēi.
	Ac.	am	um.	em.	um, u.	em.
	Ab.	a	o.	e.	u, u.	e.
Plural	*No.*	æ.	i, a. *Neut.*	es, a, *Neut.*	ūs ua.	ēs.
	Vo.	æ.	i, a. *Neut.*	es, a, *Neut.*	ūs ua.	ēs.
	Ge.	ārum.	orum.	um.	uum.	ērum.
	Da.	īs.	is.	ibus.	ĭbus.	ēbus.
	Ac.	as.	os, a. *Neut.*	es, a. *Neut.*	ūs, ua	es.
	Ab.	īs.	is.	ibus.	ibus.	ēbus.

Qu. *Are all Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles declined after one of theſe Five Declenſions?*

620. *Anſ.* There are three *Pronouns Ego, Tu, Sui,* which are otherwiſe declined, thus,

Singular	*Nom.*	Ego *I*
	Gen.	Mei *of me*
	Dat.	Mihi *to me.*
	Ac.	Me *me*
	Ab.	Me *by me*

Plural	*Nom.*	Nos *we*
	Gen.	Noſtrum *or* i *of us*
	Dat.	Nobis *to us*
	Ac.	Nos *us*
	Ab.	Nobis *with us*

Singular	*Nom.*	Tu *Thou*
	Voc.	Tu *o Thou*
	Gen.	Tui *of Thee*
	Dat.	Tibi *to Thee*
	Ac.	Te *Thee*
	Ab.	Te *from Thee.*

Plural	*Nom.*	Vos *You*
	Voc.	Vos *o You*
	Gen.	Veſtr-um *or* i *of You*
	Dat.	Vobis *to You.*
	Ac.	Vos *You*
	Ab.	Vobis *from You*

Singular	*Nom.*	
	Voc.	
	Gen.	Sui *of himſelf*
	Dat.	Sibi *to himſelf*
	Ac.	Se *himſelf*
	Ab.	Se *with himſelf*

Plural	*Nom.*	
	Voc.	
	Gen.	Sui *of themſelves*
	Dat.	Sibi *to themſelves*
	Ac.	Se *themſelves*
	Ab.	Se *with themſelves*

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the declining of Verbs.

Qu. *NOw that you have learned to decline Nouns, Pronouns and Participles, what is next to be learned?*

621. *Anſ.* The next thing to be learned, is how to decline Verbs.

Qu. *How do the Verbs that are to be declined end?*

622. *Anſ.* Of Verbs ſet down in this book, Chapter VIII,

Some end { 1. in *ſe*, as only Eſſe, Adeſſe, Abeſſe, Poſſe. 2. in *re*, as, Agĕre, Durāre, Manēre, &c. 3. in *i*, as, Pat-i, Fiĕri, Ordīri, &c.

Qu. *How may theſe be declined or changed into other endings?*

623. *Anſ.* Verbs may be changed into other endings, three ſeveral ways, and that upon three ſeveral accounts.

---

§. I. *Of Verbs Active and Paſſive.*

Qu. *Which is the firſt way of changing Verbs into another ending?*

624. *Anſ.* The firſt way is when Verbs in *Re*, are changed into Verbs in *i*, as Amār-e *into* Amār-i, Docēr-e *into* Docēr-i, Leg-ĕre *into* Leg-i.

Qu. *What Verbs are thus changed into* i, *and upon what account?*

625. *Anſ.* Thoſe Verbs in *re* which betoken *To do* ſomewhat, are changed into Verbs in *i* to betoken *To be done*, by changing

I. āre *into* āri, as { Amāre *to love*, Amāri *to be loved.* Creāre *to create*, Creāri *to be created.* Mutāre *to change*, Mut-āri *to be changed.*

II. ēre *into* ēri, as { Docēre *to teach*, Docēri *to be taught.* Habēre *to have*, Habēri *to be had.* Tenēre *to hold*, Tenēri *to be held.*

III. ĕre *into* i, as { Legĕre *to read*, Legi *to be read.* Emĕre *to buy*, Emi *to be bought.* Agĕre *to do*, Agi *to be done.*

IV. īre

IV. īre *into* īri, as { Audīre *to hear*, Audīri *to be heard.* / Punīre *to punish*, Punīri *to be punished.* / Finīre *to finish*, Finīri *to be finished.* }

N. B. *Tous of Verbs Active in* re *are made Passives in* i.
Qu. *Now tell me the Passives of these Verbs Actives following,*

Laudāre	Flēre	Addĕre	Debēre
Sumĕre	Haurīre	Perdĕre	Nutrīre
Suad-ēre	Inquin-āre	Tentāre	Sentīre

626. *Anſ.* ——

N. B. *No Verb in* ſe, *or* i, *can be thus changed, no nor all in* re, *but only thoſe in* Re, *that ſignify* to do ſomething, *and that ſo ſomething may be done.*

§ II. *Of Verbs ſignifying* { *Imperfectly, and Perfectly.*

Qu. *Which is the ſecond way of changing a Verb into another ending?*
627. *Anſ.* Secondly, Verbs betokening *to be* or *to do*, ending in *ſe* and *re* are changed into another ending in *iſſe*,

as { Eſſe *to Be* / Poſſe *to be Able* / Adeſſe *to be Preſent* / Amāre *to Love* / Flēre *to weep* / Audīre *to Hear* } is changed into { Fuiſſe *to have Been.* / Potuiſſe *to have been Able.* / Adfuiſſe *to have been Preſent.* / Amaviſſe *to have Loved.* / Fleviſſe *to have Wept.* / Audiviſſe *to have Heard.* }

Qu. *upon what account are they thus changed into* iſſe?
628. *Anſ.* The Verbs firſt ſet down ending in *ſe*, and *re*, and *i* do ever ſignify **Imperfectly** *to be* or *to do*, or to be a *doing*, not *to have been*, or *to have done*, or *to have been done.* And theſe in *ſe* and *re* are changed into *iſſe* to ſignify **Perfectly** *to have been* or *to have done.*
N. B. 629. *So that Verbs ending in* ſe, *or* re, *or* i, *ſignify* Imperfectly, *i. e. that the thing is a doing, or was a doing, or ſhall be a doing, but not done.*
2. *Verbs in* iſſe *ſignifie* Perfectly, *that is, that the thing is done, or was done or ſhall be done.*

N. B. 630.

N. B. 630. *And both the Verbs* Imperfect *and* Perfect *are called Verbs* Infinite.

Qu. *Here are two things to be noted: which is the firſt?*

631. *Anſ.* Firſt it is here to be noted, that inſtead of the *Infinite Imperfect* of Verbs that ſignify to do, the Latins often uſe the Supine in *um*, as inſtead of

Amāre *to love*	they uſe ſome-times	Amātum *to love.*
Audīre *to hear*		Audītum *to hear.*
Flēre *to weep*		Flētum *to weep.*

Qu. *What is the Second thing to be noted?*

632. *Anſ.* The Second thing to be here noted is this, that in each Verb theſe three, *viz.*

The Infinite Imperfect
The Infinite Perfect
The Supine Imperfect
} ought in the firſt place to be exactly known.

Qu. *Why are theſe three ſo neceſſary to be firſt known?*

633. *Anſ.* Becauſe theſe three are the Principal Endings, from which all other endings are formed, and therefore in all Verbs theſe three are to be firſt given.

N. B. 634. *Only Verbs in* ſe *and* re, *but none in* i, *make an ending in* iſſe, *And only Verbs in* re *or* i, *that betoken* to do *have a Supine.*

Qu. *Since theſe three are ſo needful to be known, firſt tell me, How is the* Infinite Imperfect *known?*

635. *Anſ.* The Infinite *Imperfect* is known by this that it ſignifies to *Be*, to *Do*, or to be *doing*, and ever ends in *ſe* or *re*, or *i*.

Qu. *How is the Infinite* Perfect *known?*

636. *Anſ.* The Infinite *Perfect* is formed from the *Imperfect* by changing *re* into *viſſe*, as, Amā-re amā-viſſe, Flē-re flēviſſe, Audī-re, audī-viſſe.

Qu. *How is the Supine to be known?*

637. The Supine is formed from the Infinite Imperfect by changing *re* and *ri* into *tum*, as Amā-re amā-tum, Flē-re flē-tum, Audīre audītum.

Qu. *Give me* I. *ſome* Exemples *of Verbs in* āre.

638. *Anſ.* Verbs ending in

āre *Imperf.* make	āviſſe in the *Perfect*	and ātum in the *Supine*	
as Creāre *to create*	Creāviſſe *to have created*	Creātum *to create.*	
Formāre *to form*	Formāviſſe *to have formed*	Formātum *to form.*	
Laudāre *to praiſe*	Laudāviſſe *to have praiſed*	Laudātum *to praiſe.*	

So decline Durāre, Mutāre, Locāre, Beāre, Servāre, &c.

Qu. *Are all in* āre *ſo formed?*

639. *Anſ.* No, for Dare *to give*, and Stare *to ſtand* are otherwiſe formed

Dare Dediſſe Datum. Stare Steti ſſe Statum,

Qu. *Give*

Qu. *Give me Exemples in* āri?

640. *Anſ.* Verbs in āri make their Supine in ātum, as,
Odorāri *to ſmell*, *Supine* Odorātum. Oſculāri Oſculātum.
Teſtā-ri -tum. Hortā-ri -tum. Morā-ri -tum.

Qu. *Give* II. *ſome* Exemples *in* ēre?

641. *Anſ.* Verbs ending in

ēre in the *Imperfect* make	eviſſe in the *Perfect*	ētum in the *Sup.*
Flēre *to weep*	Fléviſſe *to have wept*	Fletum *to weep*
Nēre *to ſpin*	Neviſſe *to have ſpun*	Netum *to ſpin.*
Viēre *to bind*	Vieviſſe *to have bound*	Viētum *to bind.*

So decline De-lēre, Plēre, Im-plēre.

Qu. *Are all in* ēre *ſo declined?*

642. *Anſ.* No, but all the reſt in ēre loſe their *e* in the Perfect, ſo that they have not euiſſe but uiſſe, and theſe make their Supine in ĭtum, as,

Cīēre *to ſtir up*	Ciuiſſe *to have ſtirred up*	Cĭtum *to ſtir.*
Studēre *to ſtudy*	Studuiſſe *to have ſtudied*	Studĭtum *to ſtudy.*
Habēre *to have*	Habuiſſe *to have had*	Habĭtum *to have.*

So decline Monēre, Calēre, Debēre, &c.

And many times the ſhort *i* of the Supine is caſt away, as
Tenēre *to hold*, Tenuiſſe, Tentum, *for* Tenĭtum.
Docēre *to teach*, Docuiſſe, Doctum, *for* Docĭtum.
Miſcēre *to mingle*, Miſcuiſſe, Miſtum & Mixtum *for* Miſcĭtum.
But Torrēre *to toſt*, Torruiſſe, Toſtum.

643. II. In ſome the *u* is moreover left out, ſo that they have *iſſe*, as,
Movēre *to move*, Moviſſe, Mōtum.
Fovēre *to cheriſh*, Foviſſe, Fotum.
Fervēre *to Boyl*, Ferviſſe.
Cavēre *to beware*, Caviſſe, Cautum.
Favēre *to favour*, Faviſſe, Fautum.
Vidēre *to ſee*, Vidiſſe, Viſum. *So* Invidēre.
Sedēre *to ſit*, Sediſſe, Seſſum.
Poſſidēre *to poſſeſs*, Poſſediſſe, Poſſeſſum.
Prandēre *to dine*, Prandiſſe, Pranſum.

644. III. In Four of theſe, the firſt Letter is doubled with a Vowel, as Pendēre *to hang*, Pependiſſe, Penſum.
Tondēre *to ſhear*, Totondiſſe, Tonſum.
Mordēre *to bite*, Momordiſſe, Morſum.
Spondēre *to engage*, Spoſpondiſſe, Sponſum.
But Re-Spondēre *to anſwer*, Reſpondiſſe, Reſponſum.

645. IV.

645. IV. Furthermore of theſe in *iſſi*, ſome take an *s* before *iſſe*

as Manēre *to tarry*,	Manſiſſe	Manſum
Augēre *to increaſe*,	Auxiſſe	Auctum
Mulgēre *to milk*,	Mulxiſſe	Mulctum
Frigēre *to be cold*,	Frixiſſe	
Lucēre *to ſhine*,	Luxiſſe	
Jubēre *to bid*,	Juſſiſſe	Juſſum

546. V. Of theſe ſome caſt off the Letter before *s* as,

Ridēre	Riſiſſe	Riſum	Audēre		Auſum
Suadēre	Suaſiſſe	Suaſum	Torquēre	Torſiſſe	Tor-ſum & tum
Ardēre	Arſiſſe	Arſum	Hærēre	Hæſiſſe	Hæſum

Qu. *Give me an Exemple in* ēri.

647. *Anſ.* Verbs in ēri make their Supine in ĭtum, as

Verēri *to dread*,	Verĭtum	Tuēri	Tuĭtum

Qu. *Give me* III. *ſome* Exemples *in* ĕre.

648. *Anſ.* There are none in ĕre formed aright, but

1. All in ĕre caſt away the ſhort ĕ, ſo that they make not ĕviſſe, but uiſſe

Alĕre	Aluiſſe	Alĭtum	Vomĕre	Vomuiſſe	Vomĭtum
Colĕre	Coluiſſe	Cultum	Genĕre *now* Gignĕre	Genuiſſe	Genĭtum
Molĕre	Moluiſſe	Molĭtum	Rapĕre	Rapuiſſe	Raptum
Velle (*for* Volĕre)	Voluiſſe		Sapĕre	Sapuiſſe	
Nolle (*for* Nolĕre)	Noluiſſe		Serĕre	Seruiſſe	Sertum
Frĕmere	Fremuiſſe	Frĕmĭtum	Pinsĕre	Pinſuiſſe	Piſtum
Gemĕre	Gemuiſſe	Gemĭtum	Texĕre	Texuiſſe	Textum
Tremĕre	Tremuiſſe				

649. II. And ſome of theſe caſt away a Letter before *uiſſe*, as

Linĕre	Liviſſe	Litum	Ponĕre	Poſuiſſe	Poſitum
Sinĕre	Siviſſe	Situm	Serĕre *to ſow*,	Seviſſe	Satum

650. III. Some take a long *i* before *uiſſe*, as

Petĕre	Petiviſſe	Petītum
Cupĕre	Cupiviſſe	Cupītum
Quærĕre	Quæſiviſſe	Quæſītum
Terĕre	Triviſſe	Trītum

651. V.

651. IV. The reſt in ĕre caſt off *u* and make the *Perfect* in *iſſe*, as

Bibĕre	Bibiſſe	Bibĭtum	Velle̅re	Velliſſe	Vulſum
Lambĕre	Lambiſſe		Emĕre	Emiſſe	Emtum
Scabĕre	Scabiſſe		Verrĕre	Verriſſe	Verſum
Accendĕre	Accendiſſe	Accenſum	Vertere	Vertiſſe	Verſum
Edĕre	Ediſſe	Eſum *or* Eſtum	Acuĕre	Acuiſſe	Acūtum
De-Fendĕre	Defendiſſe	Defenſum	Arguere	Arguiſſe	Argūtum
Of-Fendĕre	Offendiſſe	Offenſum	Exuere	Exuiſſe	Exūtum
Fodĕre	Fodiſſe	Foſſum	Induĕre	Induiſſe	Indūtum
Mandĕre	Mandiſſe	Manſum	Minuĕre	Minuiſſe	Minūtum
Prendĕre	Prendiſſe	Prenſum	Pluĕre	Pluiſſe	
Rudĕre	Rudiſſe		Suĕre	Suiſſe	Sutum
Scandĕre	Scandiſſe	Scanſum	Statuĕre	Statuiſſe	Statūtum
Legĕre	Legiſſe	Lectum	Solvere	Solviſſe	Solūtum
Eligĕre	Elegiſſe	Electum	Volvĕre	Volviſſe	Volutum
Fugĕre	Fugiſſe	Fugĭtum			

652. V. Some of theſe loſe a letter, as

Vincĕre	Viciſſe	Victum	Fundĕre	Fudiſſe	Fuſum
Findĕre	Fidiſſe	Fiſſum	Rumpĕre	Rupiſſe	Ruptum
Scindĕre	Scidiſſe	Sciſſum	Linquĕre	Liquiſſe	Lictum

653. VI. Some change a Letter, as

Facĕre	Feciſſe	Factum	Frangĕre	Fregiſſe	Fractum
Jacĕre	Jeciſſe	Jactum	Capĕre	Cepiſſe	Captum
Agĕre	Egiſſe	Actum	Accipĕre	Accepiſſe	Acceptum

654. VII. Some double in the Perfect, as

Diſcĕre	Didiciſſe		Perdĕre	Perdĭdiſſe	Perdĭtum
Poſcĕre	Popoſciſſe		Prodĕre	Prodĭdiſſe	Prodĭtum
Parcĕre	Pepercĭſſe & Parſiſſe	Parſum	Vendĕre	Vendidiſſe	Vendĭtum
			Tangĕre	Tetĭgiſſe	Tactum
Cadĕre	Cecĭdiſſe	Caſum	Pangĕre	Pepĭgiſſe	Pactum
Cædĕre	Cecĭdiſſe	Cæſum	Pungĕre	Pupŭgiſſe	Punctum
Pendĕre	Pependiſſe	Penſum	Fallĕre	Fefelliſſe	Falſum
Tendĕre	Tetendiſſe	Tenſum	Pellĕre	Pepŭliſſe	Pulſum
Tundĕre	Tutŭdiſſe	Tunſum	Canĕre	Cecĭniſſe	Cantum
Addĕre	Addĭdiſſe	Additum	Parĕre	Pepĕriſſe	Partum
Condĕre	Condidiſſe	Condĭtum	Currĕre	Cucurriſſe	Curſum
Credĕre	Credidiſſe	Creditum			

655. VIII.

655. VIII. Further ſome take in an *s* before *ſſi*.

Dicĕre	Dixiſſe	Dictum
Ducĕre	Duxiſſe	Ductum
Figĕre	Fixiſſe	Fixum
Frigĕre	Frixiſſe	Frixum
Tegĕre	Texiſſe	Tectum
Regĕre	Rexiſſe	Rectum
Pergĕre *for* Perrigĕre	Perrexiſſe	Perrectum
Surgĕre *for* Surrigĕre	Surrexiſſe	Surrectum
Intelligĕre	Intellexiſſe	Intellectum
Negligĕre	Neglexiſſe	Neglectum
Sugĕre	Suxiſſe	Suctum
Cingĕre	Cinxiſſe	Cinctum
Lingĕre	Linxiſſe	Linctum
Tingĕre	Tinxiſſe	Tinctum
Mingĕre *now* Meiĕre	Minxiſſe	Mictum
Fingĕre	Finxiſſe	Fictum
Pingĕre	Pinxiſſe	Pictum
Jungĕre	Junxiſſe	Junctum
Mungĕre	Munxiſſe	Munctum
Extinguĕre	Extinxiſſe	Extinctum
Comĕre	Comſiſſe	Comtum
Promĕre	Promſiſſe	Promtum
Sumĕre	Sumſiſſe	Sumtum
Carpĕre	Carpſiſſe	Carptum
Repĕre	Repſiſſe	Reptum
Serpĕre	Serpſiſſe	Serptum
Scalpĕre	Scalpſiſſe	Scalptum

656. IX*ly*. Of which ſome others change the Letter before *ſiſſe*, as

Scribĕre	Scripſiſſe	Scriptum
Cedĕre	Ceſſiſſe	Ceſſum
Premĕre	Preſſiſſe	Preſſum
Urĕre	Uſſiſſe	Uſtum
Quatĕre	Quaſſiſſe	Quaſſum

657. X*ly*. Some others leave out a Letter before *ſiſſe*, as,

Radĕre	Raſiſſe	Raſum
Vadĕre	Vaſiſſe	Vaſum
Claudĕre	Clauſiſſe	Clauſum
Plaudĕre	Plauſiſſe	Plauſum
Lædĕre	Læſiſſe	Læſum
Dividĕre	Diviſiſſe	Diviſum
Rodĕre	Roſiſſe	Roſum
Ludĕre	Luſiſſe	Luſum
Trudĕre	Truſiſſe	Truſum
Mergĕre	Merſiſſe	Merſum
Spargĕre	Sparſiſſe	Sparſum
Temnĕre	Temſiſſe	Temtum
Mittĕre	Miſiſſe	Miſſum
Flectĕre	Flexiſſe	Flexum
Pectĕre	Pexiſſe / Pexuiſſe	Pexum

658. XI*ly*. Some take in a Letter before *ſiſſe*, as,

Struĕre	Struxiſſe	Structum
Fluĕre	Fluxiſſe	Fluxum

659. XII*ly* Some exchange a Letter before *ſiſſe*, as,

Trahĕre	Traxiſſe	Tractum
Vehĕre	Vexiſſe	Vectum
Viyĕre	Vixiſſe	Victum

660. XIIIly. Some few are otherwiſe formed, as

Creſcĕre	Creviſſe	Cretum	Tollĕre	Sustŭliſſe	Sublatum
Paſcĕre	Paviſſe	Paſtum	Cernĕre	Creviſſe	Cretum
Quieſcĕre	Quiēviſſe	Quiētum	Sperněre	Spreviſſe	Spretum
Noſcĕre	Noviſſe	Notum	Sternĕre	Straviſſe	Stratum
Ferre *for* Ferĕre	Tuliſſe	Latum			

Qu. *Give me Exemples of Verbs in* ĭ, *how they form their Supine?*
661. *Anſ.*

Labi *to ſlip,*	Lapſum	Sequi *to follow,*	Secūtum
Naſci *to be born,*	Natum	Loqui *to ſpeak,*	Locūtum
Irāſci *to be angry,*	Irātum	Quĕri *to complain*	Queſtum
Nanciſci *to get,*	Nactum	Mori *to die,*	Moritum
Obliviſci *to forget,*	Oblītum	Pati *to ſuffer,*	Paſſum
Gradi *to go*	Greſſum	Uti *to uſe,*	Uſum
Fungi *to diſcharge,*	Functum	Frui *to enjoy*	Fructum & Fruitum

662. N. B. Fĭĕri, Reminiſci, *and* Veſci *have no Supine.*

Qu. *Give me* IVly *ſome* Exemples *in* īre.
663. *Anſ.* Verbs ending in

īre in the *Imp.* make īviſſe in the *Perf.* and ītum in the *Supine.*

Audīre *to hear*	Audiviſſe *to have heard*	Auditum *to hear.*
Finīre *to finiſh*	Finiviſſe *to have finiſhed*	Finītum *to finiſh.*
Mugīre *to low*	Mugiviſſe *to have lowed*	Mugītum *to low*

So decline Scīre, Nutrīre, Mutīre, Ire, [illegible] Iviſſe Itum.

Qu. *Are all Verbs ending in* īre *thus formed?*
664. *Anſ.* No, but I. Some loſe *i* and ſo make not *iviſſe* but *uiſſe* as

Aperīre	aperuiſſe	apertum	Salīre	Saluiſſe	Saltum

665. IIly. Some moreover caſt away *u* and ſo end in *iſſe*, as,

Venīre	Veniſſe	Ventum	Invenīre	Inveniſſe	Inventum

666. IIIly. Some of theſe take in an *s* before *iſſe*, as,

Vincīre	Vinxiſſe	Vinctum	Sancīre	Sanxiſſe	Sanctum

667. IV.

667. IVly. Some further caſt away a Letter before *ſſe*, as,

Fulcīre	Fulſiſſe	Fultum	Haurīre	Hauſiſſe	Hauſtum
Sarcire	Sarſiſſe	Sartum	Sentire	Senſiſſe	Senſum

Qu. *What Supines have Verbs in* īri?

668. *Anſ.* Verbs in *iri* make their Supine in *ītum*, as,

Mentīri *to lie*, Mentītum | Potīri *to maſter* Potītum
but Ordīri *to begin*, Orſum *and* Orīri *to ariſe*, Ortum.

§ III. *Of turning Verbs Infinite into Verbs Finite.*

Qu. *Which is the third account upon which Verbs are further declined?*

669. *Anſ.* Thirdly, the afore going Verbs being *Infinite* muſt yet further be changed into other endings to make them *Finite*.

Qu. *What is it to make a Verb* Finite?

670. *Anſ.* To make a Verb *Finite*, is to turn it into ſuch an ending as doth connote one certain *Perſon*, of one certain *Number*, and of one certain *Time*, and of one certain *Mood*.

And ſo every Verb Finite is either of the

First Perſon, which ſpeaketh of its ſelf, as Ego Amo *I Love*
or *Second Perſon*, which is ſpoken to, as Tu Amas *thou Loveſt*
or *Third Perſon*, which is ſpoken of, as, Ille Amat *he Loveth*.

See Num. 559.

And theſe muſt be of different endings to diſtinguiſh them one from another.

Qu. *Are the endings of each Perſon ſtill the ſame?*

671. *Anſ.* The Endings of each *Perſon* are yet further changed upon a Threefold Account.

I. *Each Perſon is either of the Singular Number or of the Plural.*

Qu. *Which is the Firſt reaſon, why the Endings of each Perſon are further changed?*

672. *Anſ.* Firſt each Perſon is changed into other endings to connote and ſhew the *Number* of them that Be, Do or Suffer, whether *one* or *more*. as,

Amo *I love*	here	but one	Amamus *we love*	here	more than one
Amas *thou loveſt*	but one	loves	Amatis *ye love*	more than one	love.
Amat *he loveth*	loves		Amant *they love*	love.	

Therefore ſome Perſons are of the *Singular Number*, and ſome of the *Plural*, and they have different endings to diſtinguiſh them from each other.

Qu. *Now ſay, of what* Number, *and of which* Perſon *are theſe?*

Narrant	*They tell*	Narrat	*He telleth*
Narras	*Thou telleſt*	Narro	*I tell*
Narramus	*We tell*	Narratis	*Ye tell*

672. *Anſ.* ——

II. *Of the twice Three Tenſes.*

Qu. *Which is the ſecond account why the endings of each Perſon are changed?*

673. *Anſ.* Secondly, Each Perſon is yet further changed into other endings to connote and ſhew the *Time* when one is, or does, or ſuffers.

Qu. *How many* Times *are there?*

674. *Anſ.* There are Three *Times* or *Tenſes*.

I. The *Preſent Time* that now is.

II. The *Præter Time* that is paſt.

III. The *Future Time* that is yet to come.

So then ſome Verbs are of the *Preſent Tenſe* or *Time*, ſome of the *Præter* and ſome of the *Future*, and theſe have diverſe endings to diſtinguiſh them one from another.

Qu. *What Verbs are of the* Preſent Tenſe?

675. *Anſ.* Thoſe Verbs are of the *Preſent Tenſe*, which betoken that at this *preſent* time, ſomewhat

{ is *now* a doing imperfectly as Cœno *I am at ſupper.*
{ or is *now* done perfectly, as Cœnavi *I have now ſupped.*

Qu. *Which Verbs are of the* Præter Tenſe?

676. *Anſ.* Thoſe Verbs are of the *Præter Tenſe*, which betoken that at ſome time *Paſt*, ſomething

{ was *then* a doing imperfectly, as, Cœnabam *I was at ſupper.*
{ or was *then* done perfectly, as, Cœnaveram *I had then ſupped.*

Qu. *Which Verbs are of the* Future Tenſe?

677. *Anſ.* Thoſe Verbs are of the *Future Tenſe*, which betoken that at ſome time *to come*, ſomething

{ ſhall be a doing imperfectly, as Cœnabo *I ſhall or will ſup, --be (at ſupper.*
{ or ſhall be done perfectly, as, Cœnavero *I ſhall have ſupt.*

Qu. *It ſeems then there are of each* Tenſe, *Two?*

678. *Anſ.* Of each *Tenſe* there are two, one ſignifying *Imperfectly*, the other *Perfectly*, ſo that there are *twice three Tenſes*.

1. The *Præſent* Imperfect, as, Cœno *I am eating my ſupper now.*
2. The *Præter* Imperfect, as, Cœnabam *I was eating my ſupper then.*
3. The *Future* Imperfect, as, Cœnabo *I will eat my ſupper by and by.*

4. The

4. The *Preſent* Perfect, as, Cœnavi *I have now ſupt, --eat my ſupper.*
N. B. *This is commonly called the* Præter Perfect *Tenſe.*
5. The *Præter* Perfect, as, Cœnaveram *I had ſupped then.*
N. B. *This is commonly called the* Præter-plu-Perfect *Tenſe.*
6. The *Future* Perfect, as, Cœnavero *I ſhall have ſupt.*
Qu. *Now tell me of what Tenſe are each of theſe endings following,*

Scripſi	*I have written*	Faciebam	*I was a doing it.*
Scribo	*I do write, I am a writing*	Faciam	*I will do it.*
Scripſeram	*I had then writen*	Facio	*I do it, I am doing it.*
Scribebam	*I was a writing*	Feceram	*I had then done it.*
Scripſero	*I ſhall have writen*	Fecero	*I ſhall have done it.*
Scribam	*I ſhall write.*	Feci	*I have now done it.*

679. *Anſ.* ———

III. *Of the Three Moods.*

Qu. *Which is the Third Account upon which the Perſons of Verbs are changed into other endings?*
680. *Anſ.* Thirdly, Each Perſon of each Number, and of each Tenſe are of different endings to connote and ſhew the Mood that is the manner of Being, Doing or Suffering.
Qu. *How many Moods are there?*
681. *Anſ.* Beſide the Infinite there are Three Moods.

I. The *Indicative* Mood, as, Amo *I do love.*
II. The *Imperative* Mood, as, Ama *Love thou, go love.*
III. The *Subjunctive* Mood, as, Si Amem *If I love.*

N. B. *So then ſome Endings of Verbs Finite are of the* Indicative *Mood, ſome of the* Imperative *Mood, and ſome of the* Subjunctive *Mood.*
Qu. *What Verbs are of the* Indicative *Mood?*
682. *Anſ.* A Verb of the *Indicative* Mood is that whereby

either one declares, that ſomething *is*, or *does*, or *is done*, as, Sum *I am*, Amo *I do love*, Amor *I am loved.*
or one askes whether the thing *is*, *does*, or *ſuffers* or no, as Sum Ego? *am I?* Amo Ego? *Do I love?* Amor Ego? *Am I beloved?*

Qu. *What endings of Verbs are of the* Imperative *Mood?*
683. *Anſ.* A Verb of the *Imperative* Mood is that whereby one bids, or prays ſomething *to be, to do*, or *to be done*, as, Es *be thou*, Ama *love thou*, Amare *be thou loved.*

Qu. *What Verbs are of the* Subjunctive *Mood?*

684. *Anſ.* A Verb of the *Subjunctive* Mood is ſubjoined after another Verb to which it is joyned by theſe words, Si *if*, ut *that*, and ſuch like, as,

I ſhall endeavour { ut ſis *that you may be*, ſi ſim *if I be.* / ut amēs *that you may love*, ſi amem *if I love.* / ut amēris *that you may be loved*, ſi amer *if I be beloved.*

Qu. *Now tell me of which Mood are each of theſe Verbs following?*

Scribe tu *write you*,	Lego *I do read*,	Si audias *if you hear.*
Scribo *I do write*	Si legas *if you read*,	Audite *hear ye.*
Si ſcribam *if I write*,	Lege tu *read you*,	Audio *I do hear.*

685. *Anſ.* ——

Qu. *As before you learned to decline a Noun in all its ſix Caſes, ſo now you muſt learn to decline or conjugate a Verb in all its perſons, What is it then to conjugate a Verb?*

686. *Anſ.* To conjugate a Verb is to tell the right ending of every Perſon in each Number, of every Tenſe, of every Mood.

Qu. *How are Verbs conjugated?*

687. *Anſ.* Verbs of a Perfect ſignification are declined one way, and Verbs of an Imperfect ſignification are declined other ways.

I. *The Conjugating of Verbs ſignifying Perfectly.*

Qu. *How are Verbs Infinite of a perfect ſignification conjugated?*

688. *Anſ.* Infinite Verbs that ſignify perfectly and end in *iſſe* are made Finite thus, by changing *iſſe* into

	1 Per.	2 Per.	3 Per.		1 Per.	2 Per.	3 Per.	
Singular	i	iſti	it	*Plural*	imus	iſtis	ērunt *or* ēre	*In the Præſ. Perf. Indicative*
	ĕrim	ĕris	ĕrit		erīmus	erītis	erint	*In the Præſ. Perf. Subjunctive*
	ĕram	ĕras	ĕrat		erāmus	erātis	erant	*In the Prat. pluperf. Indicative*
	iſſem	iſſes	iſſet		iſsēmus	iſsētis	iſſent	*In the Præt. pluperf. Subjunctive.*
	ĕro	ĕris	ĕrit		ĕrimus	ĕritis	ĕrint	*In the Fut. Perf. Indic. & Subjunct.*

Qu. *Give me an* Exemple *of an Infinitive Verb perfect thus conjugated?*

689. *Anſ.* From Riſiſſe *to have laughed* are formed

1. The Preſent Perfect commonly called the Preter Perfect of the Indicative Mood.

Sing. Riſi	Riſiſti	Riſit	*Plur.* Riſimus	Riſiſtis	Riſ-ērunt *or* ēre
I have laughed	*thou* --	*he* --	*we have laughted*	*ye* --	*they have laughed*

2. The

2. The Preſent Perfect of the Subjunctive Mood.

Sing. Si Riſĕrim riſĕris riſerit *Pl.* Si riſerĭmus riſerĭtis riſĕrint
If I have laughed, &c. *If we have laughed*, &c.

3. The Præter Perfect commonly called the Præter Plu-perfect Tenſe of the Indicative Mood.

Sing. Riſĕram riſĕras riſerat *Pl.* riſerāmus riſerātis riſĕrant
I had laughed, &c. *we had laughed*, &c.

4. The Præter Pluperfect of the Subjunctive Mood.

Sing. Si Riſiſſem riſiſsēs riſiſſet *Pl.* riſiſſēmus riſiſsētis riſiſſent
If I had laughed, &c. *If we had laughed*, &c.

5 & 6. The Future Perfect both of the Indicative and Subjunctive

Sing. Riſĕro riſĕris riſĕrit *Pl.* riſĕrĭmus riſerĭtis riſĕrint
I ſhall have laughed, &c. *we ſhall have laughed*, &c.

So decline Fuiſſe, Damnaviſſe, Fleviſſe, Dediſſe, Stetiſſe, Habuiſſe, Legiſſe, Pependiſſe, Audiviſſe, Finiviſſe, &c. *and all in* iſſe.

690. N. B. Meminiſſe *and* Odiſſe *having no Imperfect Tenſes* (*but* Memento *Remember thou, and* Mementote *Remember ye*) *are no further declined then thus.*

II. *The Conjugating of Verbs ſignifying Imperfectly.*

Qu. *Having learned to decline Verbs in* iſſe, *now tell me, how are Verbs of an Imperfect ſignification Conjugated?*

691. *Anſ.* Verbs in { re, i, ſe } are Conjugated { one way. another way. a third way.

I. *The Conjugating of Verbs in* re.

Qu. *How are Verbs in* re *declined?*

692. *Anſ.* There are four ways of declining Verbs in *re*, which are called the Four Conjugations, for

Verbs in { āre *are of the* Firſt, ēre *are of the* Second, ĕre *are of the* Third, ĭre *are of the* Fourth } Conjugation.

So that Verbs of the { I. Conjugation *have* ā *long before* re *as* amāre. II. Conjugation *have* ē *long before* re, *as* docēre III. Conjugation *have* ĕ *ſhort before* re, *as* legĕre IV. Conjugation *have* ĭ *long before* re, *as* audīre.

The First *Conjugation in* āre.

Qu. *How are Verbs in* āre *declined into Finite?*
693. *Anſ.* Verbs in *āre* are declined into the right endings of every Perſon by changing āre into

	1 P.	2 P.	3 P.		1 P.	2 P.	3 P.	
Singular	o	ās	āt	*Plural*	āmus	ātis	ant	*in the Præſ. Imp. Indicative*
	em	ēs	ēt		ēmus	ētis	ent	*in the Præſ. Imp. Subjunctive*
	ābam	ābās	ābat		ābāmus	ābātis	ābant	*in the Præt. Imp. Indicative*
	ārem	āres	āret		ārēmus	ārētis	arent	*in the Præt. Imp. Subjunctive*
	ābo	ābis	ābit		ābimus	ābitis	abunt	*in the Fut. Imp. Indicative*
	ā *or* āto		āto		āte *or* ātote		anto	*in the Fut. of the Imperative.*

Qu. *Give me an* Exemple *of Verbs in* āre *thus varied?*
694. *Anſ.* Amare amaviſſe amatum
I. From Amāre *to love* are formed

1. The Preſent Imperfect of the Indicative Mood,
Sing Amo amās amāt *Plur.* amāmus amātis amant
I love thou loveſt he loveth we love ye love they love

2. The Preſent Imperfect of the Subjunctive.
Sing. Si Amem ſi amēs ſi amet *Plur.* amēmus amētis ament
If I love, &c. *If we love,* &c.

3. The Præter Imperfect of the Indicative
Sing. Amābam amābas amābat *Plur.* amabāmus amabātis amābant
I did love, or *was a loving,* &c. *we did love,* &c.

4. The Præter Imperfect of the Subjunctive
Sing. Si Amārem amāres amāret *Plur.* amarēmus amarētis amārent
If I were a loving, &c.

5. The Future Imperfect of the Indicative Mood.
Sing. Amābo amābis amābit *Plur.* Amābimus amābitis amābunt
I ſhall or will love, &c. *we ſhall or will love.*

6. The Future of the Imperative Mood
Sing. amā *or* amāto amāto *Plur.* amāte *or* amātōte amanto
Love thou, do thou — Let him — Love ye, do ye love let them love

II. From

II. From Amāviſſe *to have loved* are formed, (by Numb. 688.)

1. The Preſent Perfect Tenſe of the Indicative.

ing. Amāvi amāviſti amāvit *Plur.* amāvĭmus amāviſtis amāvēr-unt *or* e.
I have loved, &c. *we have loved*, &c.

2. The Preſent Perfect Tenſe of the Subjunctive

ing. Si amavĕrim amavĕris amavĕrit *Plu.* amaverĭmus amaverĭtis amavĕrint.
If have loved, &c.

3. The Præterpluperfect Tenſe of the Indicative.

ing. Amavĕram amaveras amavĕrat *Plur.* amaverāmus amaverātis amaverant
I had then loved, &c.

4. The Præterpluperfect Tenſe of the Subjunctive.

ing. Si amaviſſem amaviſſes amaviſſet *Plur.* amaviſsēmus amaviſsētis amaviſsēt
If I had loved, &c.

5 & 6. The Future Perfect of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods.

ing. Cum amavĕro amavĕris amavĕrit *Plu.* amaverĭmus amaverĭtis amaverint
When I ſhall have loved, &c.
So decline Creāre, Formāre, Durāre *and all in* āre.

The Second *Conjugation in* ēre.

Qu. *How are Verbs in* ēre *turned into Finite.*

695. *Anſ.* Verbs in *ere* are thus turned into the right endings of every perſon, by changing *ere* into

	1 P.	2 P.	3 P.		1 P.	2 P.	3 P.	
Singular	eo	ēs	ĕt	Plural	ēmus	ētis	ent	*in the Preſent Imp. Indicative*
	ēam	eās	eat		eāmus	eātis	eant	*in the Præſ. Imp. Subjunctive*
	ēbam	ēbas	ēbat		ebāmus	ebātis	ēbant	*in the Præter Imp. Indicative*
	ērem	ēres	ēret		erēmus	erētis	ērent	*in the Præter Imp. Subjunctive*
	ēbo	ēbis	ēbit		ēbimus	ēbitis	ēbunt	*in the Future imp. Indicative*
	ē *or* ēto		ēto		ēte *or* ētōte		ento	*in the Future Imp. Imperative.*

Qu. *Give an Exemple of Verbs in* ēre *thus conjugated?*

696. *Anſ.* Docēre, docuiſſe, doctum.

I. From Docēre *to teach* are formed

1. The Præſent Imperfect of the Indicative Mood.

ing. Docēo Docēs Docĕt *Plur.* Docēmus docētis docent
I do teach, thou - he -- *we teach or do teach*, &c.

2. The

2. The Preſent Imperfect of the Subjunctive Mood and the Future.
Sing. Si Doceam doceas doceat *Pl.* doceāmus doceātis doceant
If I do teach if thou -- if he, &c.

3. the Præter Imperfect of the Indicative Mood.
Sing. Docēbam docēbas docēbat *Pl.* Docēbāmus docēbātis docēbant
I did teach, or I taught then, or was a teaching, &c.

4. The Præter Imperfect of the Subjunctive.
Sing. Cum Docērem docēres docēret *Pl.* docērēmus docērētis docērent
When I was teaching, &c. *when we were teaching*, &c.

5. The Future Imperfect of the Indicative.
Sing. Docēbo docēbis docēbit *Pl.* docēbĭmus docēbĭtis docēbunt
I ſhall or will teach, &c.

6. The Future imperf. and the Præſ. of the Imperative.
Sing. docē *or* docēto docēto *Pl.* docēte *or* docētōte docento
teach thou let him teach teach ye let them teach

II. From Docuiſſe *to have taught* are formed (as Numb. 688.)

1. Præſ.Perf. Indic. *Sing.* Docui *I have taught*, docuiſti *thou haſt taught*, &c.
2. Præſ. Perf. Subj. *Sing.* Si Docuĕrim *If I have taught*, docuĕris, &c.
3. Præt.pluperf. Ind. *Sing.* Docuĕram *I had taught then*, docuĕras *thou* &c.
4. Præt.pluperf Sub. *Sing.* Si Docuiſſem *if I had taught*, Si docuiſſes, &c.
5 &6. Fut.Preſ. Ind.& Subj. docuĕro *I ſhall have taught*, docuĕris, &c.

Decline thus Tenēre, Habēre, Flēre, Manēre, Carēre, *and all in* ēre.

The Third *Conjugation in* ĕre.

Qu. *How are Verbs in* ĕre *Conjugated?*

697. *Anſ.* Verbs in *ere* are turned into their right perſons by changing *ere* into

	1 P.	2 P.	3 P.		1 P.	2 P.	3 P.	
Singular	o	is	it	*Plural*	imus	itis	unt	*in the Præſ. Imp. Indicative.*
	am	ās	at		āmus	ātis	ant	*in the Præſ. Imperf. Subjunctive.*
	ēbam	ēbas	ēbat		ēbāmus	ēbātis	ēbant	*in the Præter Imperf. Indicative.*
	ĕrem	ĕres	ĕret		ĕrēmus	ĕrētis	ĕrent	*in the Præter Imp. Subjunctive.*
	am	ēs	et		ēmus	ētis	ent	*in the Fut. Imp. Indicative.*
		e *or* ĭto	ĭto			ĭte *or* ĭtōte	unto	*in the Præſ. & Fut. Imperative.*

Qu. *Give me an* Example *of a Verb in* ĕre *thus declined?*

698. *Anſ.* Legĕre, Legiſſe, Lectum.

I. From

I. From Legĕre *to read* are formed all the Imperfect Tenſes, thus

1. The Preſent Imperfect of the Indicative.

Sing. Lego legĭs legit *Pl.* legĭmus legĭtis legunt
I read or do read or I am a reading, thou, &c.

2. The Preſent Imperfect of the Subjunctive Mood and the Future

Sing. Cum Legam legas legat *Pl.* legāmus legātis legant
when I read, when thou, &c.

3. The Præter Imperfect Tenſe Indicative

Sing. Legēbam legēbas legēbat *Pl.* legēbāmus legēbātis legēbant
I read, or I was a reading, &c. *we read or were reading,* &c.

4. The Præter Imperfect of the Subjunctive Mood.

Sing. Cum Legĕrem legĕres legĕret *Pl.* legĕrēmus legĕrētis legĕrent
when I was reading, &c.

5. The Future Imperfect of the Indicative Mood.

Sing. Legam legēs leget *Pl.* legēmus legētis legent
I ſhall read, thou ſhalt read, &c.

6. The Future and Preſent Imperfect of the Imperative Mood.

Sing. Legĕ *or* legĭto legĭto *Pl.* legĭte *or* legitōte legunto
Read thou let him read read ye let them read.

II. From Legiſſe *to have read* are formed (by Rule 688.)

Præſ. Perfect Indic. Legi *I have read,* legiſti *thou haſt,* &c.
Præſ. Perfect Subj. Si Legĕrim *if I have read,* legĕris, *if thou,* &c.
Præt. Perf. Indic. Legĕram *I had read then,* legeras *thou,* &c.
Præt. Perf. Subj. Si legiſſem *if I had then read,* legiſſes *if thou,* &c.
Fut. Perf. Ind. & Subj. Cum Legĕro, *when I ſhall have read,* legĕris, &c.

So decline Agĕre, Pergĕre, Siſlĕre, Ducĕre, Trudĕre *and the reſt in* ĕre.

Qu. *Are all ending in* ĕre *ſo declined?*

699. *Anſ.* No, There are three exceptions.

700. I. Facĕre, Jacĕre, Fodĕre, Fugĕre, Capĕre, Cupĕre, Rapĕre, Sapĕre, Parĕre, Quatĕre *take in an* i *in moſt Perſons, and are thus declined by changing* ĕre *into*

		1 P.	2 P.	3 P.		1 P.	2 P.	3 P.	
Singular		io	is	it	*Plural*	imus	itis	iunt	*in the Præſ. Imp. Indicative.*
		iam	ias	iat		iāmus	iātis	iant	*in the Præſ. Imp. Subjunctive.*
		iēbam	iēbas	iēbat		iēbāmus	iēbātis	iēbant	*in the Præt. Imp. Indicative*
		ĕrem	ĕres	ĕret		ĕrēmus	ĕrētis	ĕrent	*in the Præt. Imp. Subjunctive.*
		iam	iēs	iet		iēmus	iētis	ient	*in the Fut. Imperfect Indicative.*
		e *or* ito		ito		ite *or* itōte		iunto	*in the Fut. & Præſ. Imperative.*

701. II.

701. II. { Velle (*for* volĕre) *to will, to be willing.*
Nolle (*for* Nolĕre) *to nill, or to be unwilling.*
Malle (*for* Malĕre) *to be more willing, or to have rather.*

are in four Tenſes declined otherwiſe thus,

Præſ. Imp. Indic. *Sing.*
Volo vis vult *Pl.* Volŭmus vultis volunt
I will thou wilt he will we will ye will they will
Nolo nonvis nonvult *Pl.* Nolŭmus nonvultis nolunt, *I will no*
Malo mavis mavult *Pl.* Malŭmus mavultis malunt, *I had rather*

Præſ. Imp. Subj. *Sing.*
Si Velim velis velit *Pl.* velīmus velītis velint, *If I will*
Si Nolim nolīs nolit *Pl.* nolīmus nolītis nolint, *If I will not.*
Si Malim malis malit *Pl.* malīmus malītis malint, *If I had rather*

Præt. Imp. Indic. *Sing.*
Volēbam volēbas, &c. *I was willing, &c.*
Nolēbam nolēbas, &c. *I was unwilling, I would not.*
Malēbam malēbas, &c. *I was more willing.*

Præt. Imp. Subj. *Sing.*
Si Vell-em -ēs -et *Pl.* -ēmus -ētis -ent, *If I were willing.*
Si Noll-em -ēs -et *Pl.* -ēmus -ētis -ent, *If I would not.*
Si Mall-em -ēs -et *Pl.* -ēmus -ētis -ent, *If I had rather.*

Fut. Imp. Ind. *Sing.*
Vol-am -ēs -et, &c. *I ſhall be willing.*
Nol-am -ēs -et, &c. *I ſhall be unwilling.*
Mal-am -ēs -et, &c. *I ſhall be more willing.*

Fut. Imp. Imperative
Sing. Noli, *be thou unwilling* *Pl.* nolīte *be ye unwilling.*

702. III. Ferre (*for* Ferĕre) *to bear* in three Tenſes loſes a letter thus

Præſ. Ind. Fero, fers (*for* feris) fert (*for* ferit) ferimus fertis (*for* feritis) ferunt. *I bear, or I ſuffer*
Præſ. Subj. Feram feras ferat, &c. *If I bear.*
Præt. Imp. Ind. Ferebam ferebas, &c. *I bore.*
Præt. Imp. Subj. Ferr-em -ēs -et *Pl.* -ēmus -ētis -ent *for* ferĕrem,
Fut. Imp. Indic. Fer-am -ēs -et, &c.
Fut. Imperat. Fer *or* ferto ferto *Pl.* ferte *or* fertote ferunto

703. N. B. *As* Fer *is put for* fere, *ſo for* dice, duce, face *in the ſecon Perſon Singular of the Imperative they uſe* dic, duc, fac *caſting off* e.

The Fourth *Conjugation in* ire.

Qu. *How are Verbs in* īre *Conjugated in every Perſon?*
704. *Anſ.* Verbs in *ire* are turned into their right Perſons thus, by changing *ire* into

	1 P.	2 P.	3.		1 P:	2 P.	3 P.	
Singular	īo	īs	it	Plural	īmus	ītis	iunt	*in the Præſ. Imp. Indicative.*
	iam	iās	iāt		iāmus	iātis	iant	*in the Præſ. Imp. Subjunctive.*
	iēbam	iēbas	iēbat		iēbāmus	iēbātis	iebant	*in the Præt. Imp. Indicative.*
	īrem	īres	īret		īrēmus	īrētis	īrent	*in the Prat. Imp. Subjunctive.*
	iam	ies	iet		iēmus	iētis	ient	*in the Fut. Imp. Indicative.*
	i *or* īto		īto		īte *or* ītōte		iunto	*in the Fut. & Præſ. Imperative*

Qu. *Give an* Exemple *of a Verb in* īre *thus declined?*
605. *Anſ.* Audīre, audiviſſe, auditum,
I. From Audīre *to hear* are formed

1. The Præſent Imperfect Tenſe of the Indicative Mood,
Sing. Audio audīs audit *Plur.* audīmus audītis audiunt
I do hear thou-eſt he-eth we hear ye hear they hear.

2. The Preſent and Future Imperfect of the Subjunctive.
Sing. Si Audiam audiās audiat *Plur.* audiāmus audiātis audiant
If I hear if thou heareſt, &c.

3. The Præter Imperfect Tenſe of the Indicative Mood
Sing. Audiēbam audiēbas audiēbat *Pl.* audiebāmus audiebātis audiebant
I heard then, I was a hearing, &c,

4. The Præter Imperfect of the Subjunctive.
Sing. Cum Audīrem audīres audīret *Pl.* audīremus audīretis audīrent
When I heard, or *when I was a hearing.*

5. The Future Imperfect of the Indicative,
Sing. Audiam audies audiet *Plur.* audiēmus audiētis audient.
I ſhall or will hear, &c.

6. The Future and Preſent Imperative.
Sing. Audi *or* audīto audīto *Plur.* audīte *or* audītōte audiunto.
Hear thou let him -- hear ye let them hear

II. From

II. From Audivisse *to have heard* are formed (by Rule 688)

The Pres. Perfect Ind.	Audīvi audīvisti, &c. *I have heard.*
The Pres. Perfect Subj.	Si Audivĕrim audivĕris, &c. *If I have heard.*
The Præt. Pluperf. Ind.	Audivĕram, audivĕras, &c. *I had then heard.*
The Præt. Pluperf. Subj.	Si Audīvissem audīvisses, &c. *If I had then heard.*
The Fut. Perf. Ind. & Subj.	Cum Audivĕro audivĕris *when I shall have heard*

So decline Haurīre, Sitīre, Condire, Nutrīre, *and all in* īre.

Qu. *Are all of the* Fourth Conjugation [redacted] *thus declined?*

706. *Ans.* No, there are two Exceptions, for

707. I. Fieri *for* Fīre *to become*, hath in the Præterimperfect Tense of the Subjunctive Mood Fiĕr-em -es -et, &c. *for* Firem, but in other Tenses it is declined right.

708. II. Ire *to go*, and Quire *to be able* are thus declined.

Præs. Imp. Indic.	Eo, īs, it, *Pl.* īmus, ītis, eunt, *I go.*
Pres. Imp. Subj.	Si Eam, eās, eat, *Pl.* eāmus, eātis, eant, *If I go.*
Præt. Imp. Indic.	Ibam, ības, ībat, *Pl.* Ibāmu, ibātis, ībant, *I was going.*
Præt. Imp. Subj.	Cum Irem, īres, īret, *Pl.* īrēmus, īrētis, īrent, *when I was-*
Fut. Imp. Indic.	Ibo, ībis, ibit, *Pl.* ibĭmus, ibĭtis ībunt, *I will go.*
Fut. & Pres. Imperat.	I *or* īto, īto, *Pl.* īte *or* ītōte, eunto, *Go thou*

So decline Quire, abīre, adire &c.

NB. Also in ÿ Gerund Eund-um-i-o-um for iendum queundum-io-um-o for quiendum &c.
And of the oblique Cases of the participle in ente iens eunt-is-i-em. & redeuntis [illegible]
abeuntis quiens tis
but ambire is right every where.

A Type

A Type of the four Conjugations of Verbs in re.

709. Verbs of an Imperfect ſignification in *re* are formed in all perſons thus by changing 1. āre, 2. ēre, 3. ĕre, 4. īre into theſe endings

		Sing. 1.	2.	3.	*Plur.* 1.	2.	3.
Preſent Tenſe Imperfect	Of the Indicative Mood	1. o	ās	at	āmus	ātis	ant
		2. eo	ēs	et	ēmus	ētis	ent
		3. o	ĭs	it	ĭmus	ĭtis	unt
		4. io	īs	it	īmus	ītis	iunt
	Of the Subjunctive Mood *which is alſo Future*	1. em	ēs	et	ēmus	ētis	ent
		2. eam	eās	eat	eāmus	eātis	eant
		3. am	ās	at	āmus	ātis	ant
		4. iam	iās	iat	iāmus	iātis	iant
Præter Imperfect Tenſe	Of the Indicative Mood	1. ābam	ābas	ābat	ābāmus	ābātis	ābant
		2. ēbam	ēbas	ēbat	ēbāmus	ēbātis	ēbant
		3. ēbam	ēbas	ēbat	ēbāmus	ēbātis	ēbant
		4. iēbam	iēbas	iēbat	iēbāmus	iēbātis	iēbant
	Of the Subjunctive Mood	1. ārem	āres	āret	ārēmus	ārētis	ārent
		2. ērem	ēres	ēret	ērēmus	ērētis	ērent
		3. ĕrem	ĕres	ĕret	ĕrēmus	ĕrētis	ĕrent
		4. īrem	īres	īret	īrēmus	īrētis	īrent
Future Tenſe Imperfect	Of the Indicative Mood	1. ābo	ābis	ābit	abĭmus	ābĭtis	abunt
		2. ēbo	ēbis	ēbit	ēbĭmus	ēbĭtis	ēbunt
		3. am	ēs	et	ēmus	ētis	ent
		4. iam	iēs	iet	iēmus	iētis	ient
	Of the Imperative Mood	1.	ā or āto	āto		āte or ātōte	anto
		2	ē or ēto	ēto		ēte or ētōte	ento
		3.	ĕ or ĭto	ĭto		ĭte or ĭtōte	unto
		4.	ī or īto	īto		īte or ītōte	iunto

A Type

A Type of Verbs in isse.

710. Verbs of a Perfect signification ending in *avisse, evisse, uisse, isse, sisse, xisse, &c.* are formed in all Persons thus by changing *isse* into these endings

The Pref. Perfect	Indicative	i.	isti	it	ĭmus	istis	ērunt *or* ēre
	Subjunctive	ĕrim	ĕris	ĕrit	erĭmus	erĭtis	erint
The Præt. Pluperfect	Indicative	ĕram	ĕras	ĕrat	erāmus	erātis	erant
	Subjunctive	issem	isses	isset	issēmus	issētis	issent
The Fut. Perfect	Indicat. & Subjunctive	ĕro	ĕris	ĕrit	erĭmus	erĭtis	erint

II. *The Four Conjugations of Verbs in* i.

Qu. *How are Verbs in* i *Conjugated?*

711. *Anſ.* There are four ways of declining Verbs in *i*, which are called the four Conjugations for

Verbs in { āri are of the Firſt; ēri are of the Second; ĭ are of the Third; ĭri are of the Fourth } Conjugation.

So that Verbs of the
I. Conjugation *have* ā *long before* ri
II. Conjugation *have* ē *long before* ri
III. Conjugation *have* ĭ *and not* ĕri
IV. Conjugation *have* ī *long before* ri

Each first Person of ye Passive is formed from ye first of the Active thus.

1 Where there is o in the Active add r. in the Passive as, amo amor, doceo docebor.

2 Where there is m. in ye Active Change it into r. in the Passive as amem amer docebam docebar legam legar and audiam audiar.

3 To the second person of the Imperative add re.

The First *Conjugation in* āri.

Qu. *How are Verbs in* āri *declined and made Finite?*

712. *Anſ.* Verbs in *āri* are declined into the right endings of every Perſon in every Tenſe and Mood by changing *āri* into

	1 Per.	2 Perſon.	3 Per.		1 Per.	2 Per.	3 Per.	
Singular	ŏr	āris *or* āre	ātur	*Plural*	āmur	āmĭni	antur	*in the Præſ. Imp. Ind.*
	ĕr	ēris *or* ēre	ētur		ēmur	ēmĭni	entur	*in the Præſ. & Fu. Sub.*
	ābar	abār-is *or* -e	abātur		abāmur	abāmĭni	abantur	*in the Præt. Imp. Ind*
	ārer	arēr-is *or* -e	arētur		arēmur	arēmĭni	arentur	*in the Præt. Imp. Sub.*
	ābor	abĕr-is *or* -e	ābĭtur		ābĭmur	ābĭmĭni	abuntur	*in the Fut. Indicat.*
		āre *or* ātor	ātor			amĭn-i *or* -or	antor	*in the Fu. & Pr. Imp.*

Qu. *Give me an* Exemple *of Verbs in* āri *thus declined?*

713. *Anſ.* Amari *to be loved* is thus formed

1. The Preſent of the Indicative Mood,

Sing. Amor amāris *or* amāre amātur *Plur.* amāmur amāmĭni amantur
I am beloved, thou art beloved, he is, we are, ye are, they are.

2. The Preſent Imperfect of the Subjunctive.

Sing. Si Amer amēris *or* amēre amētur *Plur.* amēmur amēmini amentur
If I be loved, &c. *If we be loved,* &c.

3. The Præter Imperfect of the Indicative

Sing. Amābar amabār-is *or*-e amabātur *Pl.* amabāmur amabāmĭni amābantur
I was loved, thou waſt, &c.

4. The Præter Imperfect of the Subjunctive

Sing. Cum Amārer amārēr-is *or* -e amārētur *Plur.* amarē-mur -mĭni ntur
When I was loved, &c.

5. The Future of the Indicative Mood.

Sing. Amābor amābĕ-ris *or* -e amābĭtur *Plur.* Amābĭmur -ĭmĭni -untur
I ſhall be loved, &c.

6. The Future and Preſent of the Imperative Mood

Sing. amāre *or* amātor amātor *Plur.* amamĭni *or* amamĭnor amantor
Be thou loved, Let him be— Be ye loved, let them be loved.

So Conjugate Creāri *to be created,* Damnāri *to be condemned,* Servāri *to be kept,* Formāri *to be formed, and the reſt in* āri *that ſignifie Paſſively to be done.*

And ſo decline Oſculāri *to kiſs*, Hortāri *to exhort*, conāri *to endeavour, and the reſt in* āri *that ſignify Actively* to do, *thus*

Præſ. Indic. *Sing.* Con-or -āris *or* -āre -ātur *Plur.* -āmur -āmĭni -antur,
I endeavour, &c.

Præſ. Subj. *Sing.* Si Con-er -ēris *or* -ēre -ētur *Pl.* -ēmur -ēmĭni -entur,
If I endeavour, &c.

Præt Imp Indic. *Sing.* Conāb-ar -āris *or* -āre -ātur *Pl.* -āmur -āmĭni -antur,
I endeavoured, &c.

Præt. Imp. Subj. *Sing.* Si Conār-er -ēris *or* -ēre -ētur *Pl.* -ēmur -ēmĭni -entur
If I endeavoure, &c.

Fut. Indic. *Sing.* Conāb-or -ĕris *or* -ĕre -ĭtur *Plur.* -ĭmur -ĭmĭni -untur
I will endeavour, &c

Fut. Imperat. *Sing.* Con-āre *or* -ātor -ātor *Pl.* -āmĭni *or* -āminor -antor
Endeavour thou, &c.

The Second *Conjugation in* ēri.

Qu. *How are Verbs in* ēri *declined?*

714. *Anſ.* Verbs in *eri* are turned into each Perſon thus, by changing *eri* into

	1 P.	2 P.	3 P.		1 P.	2 P.	3 P.	
Singular	eor	ēris *or* ēre	ētur	Plural	ēmur	ēmĭni	entur	*in the Præſ. Indicative.*
	ear	eāris *or* eāre	eātur		eāmur	eāmĭni	eantur	*in the Præſ. Subjunct.*
	ēbar	ebāris *or* ebāre	ebātur		ebāmur	ebāmĭni	ebantur	*in the Præt. Imp. Ind.*
	ērer	erēris *or* erēre	erētur		erēmur	erēmĭni	erentur	*in the Præt. Imp. Subj.*
	ēbor	ebĕris *or* ebĕre	ebĭtur		ebĭmur	ebĭmĭni	ebuntur	*in the Fut. Indicative.*
		ēre *or* ētor	ētor			ēmĭni *or* ēminor	entor	*in the Future Imperat.*

Qu. *Give an* Exemple *of a Verb in* ēri *ſo declined?*

715. *Anſ.* Docēri *to be taught* is thus Conjugated.

1. The Præſent Tenſe of the Indicative Mood.

Sing. Doceor docēris *or* docēre docētur *Plur.* Docēmur docēmĭni docentur
I am now taught or in teaching, &c.

2. The Preſent and the Future of the Subjunctive Mood.

Sing. Si Doceār docēāris *or* doceā-re -ātur *Pl.* doceāmur doceāmĭni doceantur
If I be taught, &c.

3. the Præter Imperfect of the Indicative Mood.

Sing. Docēbar docebār-is *or* -e docebātur *Pl.* Docebā-mur -mĭni -ntur
I was then taught, or a being taught, &c.

4. The

4. The Præter Imperfect of the Subjunctive.
Sing. Cum Docērer docerēr-is *or* -e docerētur *Pl.* docērē-mur -mĭni -ntur
When I was taught, or while I was a teaching.

5. The Future Tenſe of the Indicative.
Sing. Docēbor doceběr-is *or* -e docebĭtur *Pl.* docēb-ĭmur -imĭni -untur
I ſhall be taught, &c.

6. The Future Tenſe of the Imperative.

Sing.			*Pl.*		
docēre *or* docētor	docētor		docēmĭ-ni *or* nor	docentor	
Be thou taught	*let him be taught*		*be ye taught*	*let them be* --	

So decline all Verbs in ēri, *whether* Paſſive *as,* Habēri *to be had,* Monēri *to be warn'd,* Tenēri *to be held, or* Active *as,* Tuēri *to behold,* Verēri *to Fear,* &c.

The Third *Conjugation in* ĭ.

Qu. *How are Verbs in* ĭ *of the Third Conjugation declined?*
716. *Anſ.* Verbs in *i* are of the Third Conjugation, and are turned into their right perſons by changing *i* into.

	1 P.	2 P.	3 P.		1 P.	2 P.	3 P.
Singular	or	ĕris *or* ĕre	ĭtur	*Plural*	ĭmur	ĭmĭni	untur *in the Præſ. Indicative.*
	ar	āris *or* āre	ātur		āmur	āmĭni	antur *in the Præſ. Subjunctive.*
	ēbar	ebā-ris *or* -e	ebātur		ebāmur	ebāmĭni	ebantur *in the Præter Imp. Indic.*
	ĕrer	erēr-is *or* -e	erētur		ĕrēmur	erēmĭni	erentur *in the Præt. Imp. Subj.*
	ar	ēris *or* ēre	ētur		ēmur	ēmĭni	entur *in the Fut. Indicative.*
		ĕre *or* ĭtor	ĭtor			imĭn-i *or* -or	untor *in the Fut. Imperatives*

Qu. *Give an* Exemple *of a Verb in* ĭ *thus Conjugated?*
717. *Anſ.* Legi *to be read* is ſo Conjugated.

1. The Preſent Imperfect of the Indicative.
Sing. Legor legĕr-ĭs *or* -e legĭtur *Pl.* legĭmur legimĭni leguntur.
I am read, thou, &c.

2. The Preſent Imperfect of the Subjunctive Mood,
Sing. Si Legar legār-is *or* -e legārur *Pl.* legāmur legāmĭni legantur.
If I be read, &c.

3. The Præter Imperfect Tenſe Indicative
Sing. Legēbar legebār-is *or* -e legebātur *Pl.* legēbā-mur -mĭni -ntur
I was read, or I was in reading, i. e. *in being read.*

4. The Præter Imperfect of the Subjunctive Mood.

Sing. Cum Legĕrer legerēr-is *or* -e legĕrētur *Pl.* legĕrē-mur -mĭni -ntur
when I was read, or in reading, &c.

5. The Future of the Indicative Mood.

Sing. Legar legēris *or* -e legētur *Pl.* legēmur legēmĭni legentur
I ſhall or will be read, &c.

6. The Future Tenſe of the Imperative Mood.

Sing. Legĕre *or* legĭtor legĭtor *Pl.* legimĭni *or* legimĭnor leguntor
Be thou read *let him be read* *be ye read* *let them be read.*

So decline all in i, *whether they ſignify* Paſſively, *as* Agi *to be done,* Emi *to be bought,* Tundi *to be thumped, or* Actively, *as* Labi *to ſlip,* Loqui *to ſpeak,* Queri *to complain,* Sequi *to follow,* &c.

Qu. *Are all in* i *thus declined?*

718. *Anſ.* No, there are two exceptions, for

719. I. The Paſſives of thoſe ſet down in Rule 700. as Capi, Jaci, &c. And alſo theſe three, *Mori, Gradi, Pati* in moſt Perſons take in an *i* and are thus declined by changing *i* into

	1 P.	2 P.	3 P.		1 P.	2 P.	3 P.
Singular	ĭor	ĕris *or* ĕre	ĭtur	*Plural*	ĭmur	ĭmĭni	iuntur *in the Præſ. Indicative.*
	iar	iāris *or* iāre	iātur		iāmur	iāmĭni	iantur *in the Præſ. Subjunctive*
	iēbar	iebār-is *or* -e	iebātur		iebāmur	iebāmini	iebantur *in the Præt. Imp. Ind.*
	ĕrer	ĕrēris *or* ĕrēre	ĕrētur		ĕremur	erēmini	ĕrentur *in the Præt. Imp. Subj.*
	iar	iēris *or* iēre	iētur		iēmur	iēmĭni	ientur *in the Fut. Indicative.*
		ĕrĕ *or* ĭtor	ĭtor			ĭmĭn-i *or* -or	iuntor *in the Fut. Imperative.*

720. II. Ferri (*for* feri) *to be born,* loſes a letter in ſome Perſons.

Præſ. Imp. Ind. Feror, ferr-is *or* -e fertur *P.* ferĭ-mur -ĭmĭni -untur, *I am borne.*
Preſ. Imp. Subj. Si Ferar, ferār-is *or* -e, ferātur, &c. *If I be borne or carried.*
Præt. Imp. Ind. Ferēbar, ferēbāris *or* ferēbāre, &c. *I was carried,* &c.
Præt. Imp. Subj. Ferr-er -ēris *or* -ēre -ēmur -ēmĭni entur *for* fererer.
Fut. Imp. Ind. Ferar ferēris *or* ferēre, &c. *I ſhall or will be carryed, or borne*
Fut. Imperat. Ferre *or* fertor fertor *Pl.* ferimĭni *or* ferimĭnor feruntor,
for ferĕre ferĭtor, *be thou borne.*

The

The Fourth *Conjugation in* iri.

Qu. *How are Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation in* īri *declined?*

721. *Anſ.* Verbs in *iri* are of the *Fourth Conjugation*, and are turned into the right endings of every Perſon by changing *iri* into

	1 P.	2 P.	3.
Singular	ior	iris *or* ire	itur
	iar	iāris *or* iāre	iātur
	iēbar	iēbār-is *or* -e	iebātur
	īrer	irēr-is *or* -e	irētur
	iar	iēris *or* iēre	iētur
		īre *or* ītor	ītor

	1 P:	2 P.	3 P.	
Plural	īmur	īmīni	iuntur	*in the Præſ. Indicative.*
	iāmur	iāmīni	iantur	*in the Præſ. Subjunctive*
	iēbāmur	iēbāmīni	iēbantur	*in the Præt. Imp. In*
	irēmur	irēmīni	irentur	*in the Præt. Imp. Subj.*
	iēmur	iēmīni	ientur	*in the Fut. Indicative.*
		īmīni *or* -or	iuntor	*in the Fut. Imperative.*

Qu. *Give me an* Example *of a Verb in* īri *ſo declined?*

722. *Anſ.* Audīri *to be heard* is thus formed

1. The Præſent Imperfect Tenſe of the Indicative Mood,
Sing. Audior audīr-is *or* -e auditur *Plur.* audīmur audīmīni audiuntur
I am heard or am now in hearing i. e. *in being heard, thou art*, &c.

2. The Preſent and Future Imperfect of the Subjunctive.
Sing. Ut Audiar audiār-is *or* -e audiatur *Plur.* audiā-mur -mīni audiantur.
That I may be heard, that thou mayeſt, &c.

3. The Præter Imperfect Tenſe of the Indicative Mood
Sing. Audiēbar audiēbār-is *or* -e audiēbātur *Pl.* audiebā-mur mīni ntur
I was heard, I was then in hearing, i. e. *in being heard.*

4. The Præter Imperfect of the Subjunctive.
Sing. Ut Audīrer audīrēr-is *or* -e audīrētur *Pl.* audīrē-mur -mīni -ntur.
That I might be heard, that thou mighteſt, &c.

5. The Future Imperfect of the Indicative,
Sing. Audiar audiēr-is *or* -e audiētur *Plur.* audiēmur audiēmīni audientur.
I ſhall or will be heard, thou ſhalt or wilt be heard, &c.

6. The Future Tenſe of the Imperative Mood.

Sing.	Audīre *or* audītor	audītor	*Plur.*	audīmīn-i *or* -or audiuntor-
	Be thou heard	*let him* --		*be ye heard* *let them be* --

So decline, Punīri *to be puniſhed*, Condīri *to be candyed*, Haurīri *to be drawn*, Partīri *to part*, Largīri *to give largly, and all in* īri, *whether they ſignifie* Paſſively, *or* Actively.

The Endings of every Person of Verbs in i, *in each Number of every Tense and Mood of all the Four Conjugations.*

723. Verbs Infinite in *i* are made Finite by { 1. āri, 2. ēri, 3. i, 4. īri } into these endings

		Sing. 1.	2.	3.	*Plur.* 1.	2.	3.
Present Tense Imperfect.	Of the Indicative Mood	or	āris *or* āre	ātur	āmur	āmĭni	antur
		eor	ēris *or* ēre	ētur	ēmur	ēmĭni	entur
		or	ĕris *or* ĕre	ĭtur	ĭmur	ĭmĭni	untur
		ior	īris *or* īre	ītur	īmur	īmĭni	iuntur
	Of the Subj. Mood	er	ēris *or* ēre	ētur	ēmur	ēmĭni	entur
		ear	eāris *or* eāre	eātur	eāmur	eāmĭni	eantur
		ar	āris *or* āre	ātur	āmur	āmĭni	antur
		iar	iāris *or* iāre	iātur	iāmur	iāmĭni	iantur
Præter Imperfect Tense	Indicative.	ābar	abāris *or* abāre	ābātur	abāmur	abāmĭni	abantur
		ēbar	ebāris *or* ebāre	ebātur	ebāmur	ebāmĭni	ebantur
		ēbar	ebāris *or* ebāre	ebātur	ebāmur	ebāmĭni	ēbantur
		iēbar	iēbāris *or* iēbāre	iēbātur	iēbāmur	iēbāmĭni	iēbantur
	Subjunctive.	ārer	ārēris *or* arēre	arētur	arēmur	arēmĭni	ārentur
		ērer	ērēris *or* ērēre	ērētur	erēmur	eremĭni	erentur
		ĕrer	ĕērris *or* ĕrēre	ĕrētur	ĕrēmur	ĕrēmĭni	ĕrentur
		īrer	irēris *or* īrēre	īrētur	īrēmur	īrēmĭni	īrentur
Future Tense Imperfect	Indicative	ābor	ābĕris *or* ābĕre	ābĭtur	ābĭmur	ābĭmĭni	ābuntur
		ēbor	ēbĕris *or* ebĕre	ebĭtur	ebĭmur	ebĭmĭni	ebuntur
		ar	ēris *or* ēre	ētur	ēmur	ēmĭni	entur
		iar	iēris *or* iēre	iētur	iēmur	iēmĭni	ientur
	Imperative		āre *or* ātor	ātor		āmĭn-i *or* or antor	
			ēre *or* ētor	ētor		ēmĭn-i *or* or entor	
			ĕre *or* ĭtor	ĭtor		ĭmĭn-i *or* or untor	
			īre *or* ītor	ītor		īmĭn-i *or* or iuntor	

N.B. Verbs in (i) have not a Word of a Perfect Signification but it is made up by the Verb esse and a Participle Perfect in Tus Sus or Xus as Amatus sum I am loved. Tu doctus es Thou art perfectly taught. Ille victus fuit, He hath been perfectly beat. Nos capti sumus We are taken. Vos perditi estis ye are perfectly undone. Mulires sunt visæ Women are seen, see 815

III. The

III. *The Conjugation of the Verb in* Se.

Qu. *How is the Verb in* ſe *declined?*
724. *Anſ.* Eſſe, Fuiſſe is thus conjugated, *So Fore.*
1. From Eſſe *to be* are formed

1. The Præſent Tenſe Indicative

Sing.	Sum	ĕs	eſt	*Plur.*	Sŭmus	eſtis	ſunt
	I am	*thou art*	*he is*		*we are*	*ye are*	*they are.*

2. The Præſent Subjunctive

Sing. Ut Sim ut Sīs ut Sĭt *Plur.* Ut Sīmus ut Sītis ut Sint
That I may be, that thou, that he, &c.

3. The Præter Imperfect Indicative.

Sing. Eram ĕras erat *Plur.* Erāmus erātis erant
I was, thou waſt, he was, we were, ye were, they were.

4. The Præter Imperfect of the Subjunctive.

Sing. Ut Eſſem ut eſſes ut eſſet ut eſsēmus ut eſsētis ut eſſent
That I might be, that thou, &c.
Forem fores foret foremus foretis forent

5. The Future Imperfect Indicative.

Sing. Ero ĕris ĕrit *Plur.* Erĭmus erĭtis erunt
I ſhall or will be, &c. *we ſhall or will be,* &c.

6. The Future and Præſent Imperative

Sing.	Es *or* eſto	eſto	*Plur.*	Eſte *or* eſtote	ſunto
	Be thou	*let him be*		*be ye*	*let them be.*

II. From Fuiſſe *to have been* are formed by rule 688.

The Preſ.Perfect Ind. *Sing.* Fui fuiſti fuit *Pl.* fuĭmus fuiſtis fuerunt *or* fuere
I have been, &c.
The Preſ.Perfect Subj.*Sing.* Si Fuĕr-im -is it *Pl.* Fuerĭmus,&c. *If I have been,*&c
The Præt.Pluperf.Ind. *Sing.* Fuĕram fuĕras fuĕrat, &c. *I had been,* &c.
The Præt.Pluperf.Subj. *Sing.* Si Fuiſſem fuiſſes, &c. *If I had been,* &c.
The Fut.Perf.Ind.& Subj.*Sing.* Fuĕr-o -is -it *Pl.* Fuĕrĭmus, &c. *I ſhall have been*

So decline Adeſſe, adfuiſſe, *and* abeſſe, abfuiſſe, *So* Poſſe potuiſſe, *thus.*

725. I. From Poſſe (*for* Poteſſe) *to be able* are formed

Præſ.Ind. Poſſum potĕs poteſt *Pl.* Pl. poſsŭmus poteſtis poſſunt, *I am able,*&c.
Præſ.Subj. Si Poſſim poſsīs poſſit P. poſsīmus poſsītis poſſint, *If I may be able*
Præt.Imp.Ind. Potĕram potĕras, &c. *I might, I could, or I was able,* &c.

Præt. Imp. Subj. Si Poſſem poſſes poſſet *Pl.* Poſsēmus, &c. *If I could then.*
Fut. Ind. Potĕro potĕris potĕrit *Pl.* Poterĭmus poterĭtis potĕrunt, *I ſhall* --
The Imperative is wanting becauſe we command not one *To be able.*

II. From Potuiſſe *to have been able* are formed Potui, potuĕrim, potuĕram, potuiſſem, potuĕro.

N. B. *Thus you have learned to decline all ſorts of Verbs, as well as Nouns Pronouns and Participles.*

CHAP. XVII.

Concerning Sentences and Phraſes.

Qu. *HAving learned the Eight ſorts of words, now tell me what is to be done with theſe words?*

726. *Anſ.* The uſe of the Words is to make ſayings or ſentences.

Qu. *How many Words go to the making of a Sentence?*

727. *Anſ.* I. Sometimes *one* word maketh a *Saying*, and it is only an Interjection: For an Interjection is ſuch a word, as alone doth expreſs, and ſignifie the meaning of ones mind.

Thus when we would expreſs that
we would have one attend, we ſay, O! Eho! Heus!
we do attend, we ſay, Hem! Ha!
we would have one come to us, Ehodum! Heus!
We would have a thing taken out of our ſight, we ſay, Apage!
we would have ſilence made, we ſay, 'St! Au!
we would encourage and engage one, we ſay, Eja!
we ſhew ſomething worthy to be obſerved, we uſe, En! Ecce!
we are ſurpriſed with wonder, we ſay, Vah! Papæ!
We are dubious and conſidering of a thing, we ſay, Hem? Hum!
we account a thing bravely done, we ſay, Evax! Euge!
we account it mean, and ſlight it, Hui! Vah!
we account it ridiculous, we ſay, Ha, ha, he!
we praiſe one, we ſay, Euge!
we deſire, and long for ſomewhat, O!
we abominate a thing, Phy!
The caſe is piteous, we ſay, Hei! Heu! Eheu!
We denounce wo to any, we ſay, Hei! Væ!

N B. *Where each of theſe Interjections ſingly expreſs our minds as well, as many other words would do.*

728. II.

728. II. Sometimes Two Words make one Sentence as,
Ego ſum *I am*, Tu amas *thou loveſt*, Thomas legit, *Thomas readeth.*
729. III. Sometimes Three Words go to make one Sentence, as,
Deus eſt bonus, *God is good*; Homines ſunt mortales, *Men are mortal*; Mundus eſt magnus, *the World is great.*
730. IV. Some Sentences conſiſt of Four Words, as
Johannes eſt puer bonus, *John is a good Boy.*
Martha eſt bona puella, *Martha is a good Girl.*
731. Sometimes Five words, ſometimes ſix, ſometimes ſeven; &c. go to make one Sentence.

Qu. *How are words to be put together to make Sentences?*

732. *Anſ.* Every word is to be adjoyned to ſome other word in the Sentence, and to be rightly adjoyned, and theſe two words are called a *Phraſe.*

Qu. *What then is a* Phraſe?

733. *Anſ.* A *Phraſe* is two Words put rightly together, as,
I am, thou art, he is; not *I art, thou is, he am.*
Ego ſum, Tu es, Ille eſt; *not* Ego es, Tu eſt, Ille ſum.

Qu. *When are two words put rightly together in a Phraſe?*

734. *Anſ.* Then is a Phraſe rightly made, when the two words are ſo put together, as the beſt Speakers of the Language have uſed to do.

Qu. *How ſhall a Learner know to make Phraſes, as the beſt Authors did?*

735. *Anſ.* Here ſhall be ſet down,
I. **Exemples** full, plain, eaſie, and many ſhewing how the beſt Speakers uſed to put the words together.
II. **Rules** few, ſhort, eaſie, in right order, directing us to imitate them.
III. **Exercises** for our imitation of thoſe Exemples by the direction of theſe Rules.

Qu. *How many ſuch Rules for Phraſes will there be?*

736. *Anſ.* The main Rules for making Phraſes are 13.

§ I. *The Firſt Phraſe.*

Qu. *When is the* Firſt Phraſe *uſed?*

737. *Anſ.* The *Firſt Phraſe* is uſed when we call any thing, as, *O Maſter! Soho Thomas!*

Qu. *Which are the two Words to be put together in the Firſt Phraſe?*

738. *Anſ.* The Firſt word in this Firſt Phraſe is one of thoſe Interjections uſed to *call* a thing by, *as*, O! Io! Eho! Ehodum! Heus! Proh!
The Second word is a Subſtantive of the *Vocative Caſe*, which Caſe is deſigned to denote the *Thing called*, as, *Domine! Petre! Guilielme!*

Qu. *Give me ſome* Exemples *how the Latins put theſe two together?*

739. *Anſ.* —

I. Exemples

I. Exemples of the Firſt Phraſe.

O Domine!	*O Lord!*	Eho Adame!	*Soho Adam!*	O Mulier!	*O woman!*
O Pater!	*O Father!*	Heus Filia!	*Ho Daughter!*	O Mater!	*O Mother!*

Qu. *What is the* Rule *to direct us to make the like?*
740. *Anſ.* ——

II. Rule of the Firſt Phraſe.

Whenſoever any thing is to be called upon
Firſt uſe an Interjection of calling, *O! Io! Heus! Eho! Ehodum!* and Secondly to it put the Name of the *thing called* in the Vocative Caſe.
N. B. *And this is the only uſe of the Vocative Caſe.*

Qu. *What are the* Exerciſes *for imitation of this Phraſe?*
741. *Anſ.* ——

III. Imitations of the Firſt Phraſe.

O *Heaven!*	*O Man!*	*O Moon!*	*O Abraham!*
O *Earth!*	*O Soul!*	*O Woman!*	*Soho Benjamin!*
O *Angel!*	*O Sun!*	*O Dog!*	*Ho Charles!*
O *Giant!*	*O Gooſe!*	*O Houſe!*	*O Chriſtopher!*
O *D[illegible]marſ!*	*O Aſs!*	*O Adam!*	*O Daniel!*
O *David!*	*O Edmund!*	*Soho Edward!*	*Ho Franciſs!*

More Latin Exemples *to be turned into* Engliſh.

O Deus!	O Joannes?	O Matthæe!	O Richarde!
O Henrice!	O Luca!	O Paule!	Eho Roberte!
O Jacobe!	O Marce!	Heus Petre!	Ehodum Samuel!
O Thoma!	O Guilielme!	O Nathanael!	O Antoni!
O Alicia!	O Elizabetha!	O Jana!	O Rachel!
O Anna!	O Franciſca!	O Lucia!	O Sarah!
O Catherina!	O Hanna!	O Martha!	O Thomaſina!

More Engliſh Exemples *to be turned into* Latin.

O Amy!	*O Eve!*	*O Joan!*	*O Rebecca!*
O Barbara!	*O Grace!*	*O Margaret!*	*O Suſan!*
O Dorothy!	*O Nell!*	*O Mary!*	
O Doctor!	*O Merchant!*	*O Herdſman!*	*O Flock!*
O Scrivener!	*O Poet!*	*O Seaman!*	*O Husbandman!*
O Phyſician!	*O muſician!*	*O Ship!*	*O Painter!*

More

More Latin Exemples *in the Plural Number.*

O Patres!	O Filiæ!	O Homines!	O Canes!
O Matres!	O Angeli!	O Anſeres!	O Mulieres!
O Filii!	O Gigantes!	O Aſini!	O Piſtores!
O Sartores	O Piſces!	O Aucupes!	O Reges!
O Fabri!	O Piſcatores!	O Scholæ!	O Reginæ!
O Coqui!	O Aves!	O Eccleſiæ!	O Diſcipuli!

More Engliſh Imitations *in the Plural Number.*

O Nobles!	*O Dukes!*	*O Witneſſes!*	*O Adulterers!*
O Princes!	*O Earls!*	*O Thieves!*	*O Harlots!*
O Judges!	*O Knights!*	*O Robbers!*	*O Witches!*
O Maſters!	*O Apoſtles!*	*O Prieſts!*	*O Armies!*
O Ushers!	*O Biſhops!*	*O Idols!*	*O Generals!*
O Miniſters!	*O Presbyters!*	*O Souldiers!*	*O Infants!*
O Boys!	*O Girls!*	*O Young men!*	*O Oldmen!*
O Old women!	*O Paſſengers!*	*O Horſemen!*	*O Footmen!*
O Guides!	*O Fellow Travellers*	*O Iſlands!*	*O Countreys!*

Qu. *Why is this Phraſe the Firſt?*

742. *Anſ.* This Phraſe is the Firſt, becauſe before we ſpeak, we call upon the thing, to which we ſpeak it, to hear us.

§ II. The Second Phraſe.

Qu. *Having beſpoke the Attention of that which we ſpeak to, What is next to be done?*

743. *Anſ.* The next thing is to expreſs or tell *What thing is, does,* or *is done,* and this is the *Second Phraſe.*

Qu. *What are the two words uſed in this Phraſe?*

744. *Anſ.* Firſt, The *thing* that *is, does* or *is done,* is denoted by a word Subſtantive of the *Nominative Caſe,* as, Ego, Tu, Pater.

Secondly, The word that denotes that this thing *is,* or *does,* or *ſuffers* is a *Verb Finite.*

So that the Second Phraſe conſiſts of a Nominative caſe and a Verb Finite.

Qu. *Give ſome* Exemples *how the Latins uſed to put theſe together?*

745. *Anſ.* ——

I. Exemples

I. Exemples of the Second Phraſe

Sing.	Ego ſum, *I am.*	Ego amo, *I love.*	Ego amor, *I am loved.*
	Tu es, *thou art.*	Tu amas, *thou loveſt.*	Tu amaris, *thou art loved.*
	Ille eſt, *he is.*	Ille amat *he loveth.*	Ille amatur, *he is loved.*
Plur.	Nos ſumus *we are.*	Nos amamus, *we love.*	Nos amamur, *we are loved.*
	Vos eſtis *ye are.*	Vos amatis, *ye love.*	Vos amamini, *ye are loved.*
	Illi ſunt, *they are.*	Illi amant, *they love.*	Illi amantur, *they are loved.*

Qu. *Why is the Verb to every Nominative Caſe turned into another Perſon or Number?*

746. *Anſ.* Of whatever Number and Perſon the Nominative Caſe is, ſtill the Verb muſt be put into the ſame Number and the ſame Perſon to comply with it; ſo thar,

If the Nominative be of the *Firſt* Perſon, the Verb muſt be of the *Firſt* Perſon too.

If the Nominative be of the *Second* Perſon, the Verb muſt be of the *Second* Perſon too.

If the Nominative Caſe be of the *Third* Perſon, the Verb muſt be of the *Third* Perſon too.

If the Nominative Caſe be of the *Singular* Number, the Verb muſt be of the *Singular* Number too.

If the Nominative be of the *Plural*, the Verb muſt be put into the *Plural* too.

Ego is the Nominative of the Firſt Perſon Singular, *Nos* the Nominative of the Firſt Plural.

Tu is the Nominative caſe of the Second Perſon Singular, *Vos* the Nominative of the Second Perſon Plural.

All other Nominative Caſes, when ſpoken of, are of the third Perſon, *Singular*, if one be meant; *Plural*, if more then one.

Qu. *Give me now the* Rule *of the Second Phraſe?*

747. *Anſ.* ——

II. The Rule of the Second Phraſe.

When one is to ſhew that ſome thing *is*, or *doth*, or *is done*; Firſt put the word for that thing in the Nominative Caſe, and Secondly, put to it the Verb Finite in the ſame Number and in the ſame Perſon.

Qu. *which are the* Exercitſes *for* Imitation *of the Second Phraſe?*

748. *Anſ.* ——

III. Imitation

III. Imitations of the Second Phraſe, with more Exemples.

Exemples of Verbs in eſſe.

1. *In the Indicative Mood Præſent Tenſe.*

Quis eſt? *Who is?*

Ego ſum, *thou art.*	Ego adſum, *thou art by.*	*I am away*, Tu abes.
Ille eſt, *we are.*	Ille adeſt, *we are by.*	*He is away*, Nos abſumus
Vos eſtis, *they are.*	Vos adeſtis, *they are by.*	*Ye are away*, Illi abſunt.

The Præter Imperfect Tenſe.

Ego eram, *Thou waſt.*	*I was by*, Tu aderas.	Ego aberam, *thou waſt* } away
Ille erat, *we were.*	*He was by*, Nos aderamus.	Ille aberat, *we were* } away
Vos eratis, *They were.*	*Ye were by*, Illi aderant.	Vos aberatis, *they were* } away

The Future Imperfect Tenſe.

Ego ero, *Thou ſhalt be.*	Ego adero, *thou ſhalt be by.*	*I ſhall*	Tu aberis.
Adamus erit *we ſhall be*	Adamus aderit, *we ſhall be by*	*Adam ſhall* } be away	Nos aberimus.
Vos eritis, *men ſhall be.*	Vos aderitis, *men ſhall be by*	*Ye ſhall*	Homines abgrunt

The Præter Perfect Tenſe.

I have been, Tu Fuiſti.	Ego adfui, *Thou haſt been by.*
Abraham hath been, Nos fuimus.	Abrahamus adfuit, *we have been by.*
Ye have been, Mulieres fuerunt.	Vos adfuiſtis, *the women have been by.*

The Præter Pluperfect Tenſe.

Ego adfueram, *Thou haſt* } been by	*I had* } been away	Tu abfueras.
Daniel adfuerat, *we had* } been by	*Daniel had* } been away	Nos abfueramus.
Vos adfueratis, *the boys had* } been by	*Ye had* } been away	Pueri abfuerant.

2. *The Imperative Mood.*

Tu es, *let him be.*	*Be thou by,* adeſto.	Abes *or* abeſto, *ſee he be away*
Vos eſte, *let them be.*	*Be ye by,* adſunto.	Abeſte, *ſee they be away.*

3. *The Subjunctive Mood, Præſent Imperfect and Future.*

Si Ego ſim, *If thou mayeſt be.*	*If I be by,* ſi tu adſis.
Si Jacobus ſit, *If we may be.*	*If James be by,* ſi nos adſimus.
Si vos ſitis, *If the Aſſes be.*	*If ye be by,* ſi Aſini adſint.

The Præter Imperfect Tenſe.

Si ego adeſſem, *if thou wert preſent.*	*If I were away,* ſi tu abeſſes.
Si uxor adeſſet, *if we were by.*	*If the wife were* -- ſi nos abeſſemus.
Si vos adeſſetis, *If Judges were by.*	*If ye were* -- ſi Judices abeſſent.

The Præterperfect Tenſe,

Si ego fuerim, *If thou hadſt been.*	*If I have been away,* ſi tu abfueris.
Si ſol fuerit, *if we have been.*	*If the Sun hath* -- ſi nos abfuerimus.
Si vos fueritis, *if ſtars have been.*	*If ye have* -- ſi ſtellæ abfuerint.

The Præterplupect Tenſe.

Cum ego adfuiſſem, *when thou hadſt*	*been by.*	*When* *I had*	*been away,*	Cum abfuiſſes.
Cum Paulus adfuiſſet, *when we had*		*Paul had*		Cum abfuiſſemus.
Cum vos adfuiſſetis, *when the Cows* --		*Ye had*		Cum Vaccæ abfuiſſent

The Future Perfect.

Cum ego fuero, *when thou ſhalt have*	*been.*	*When* *I ſhall*	*have*	Cum tu abfueris.
Cum Petrus fuerit, *when we ſhall* --		*Thomas*	*been*	Cū nos adfuerimus
Cum vos fueritis, *when the things* --		*Ye* --	*away*	Cum res abfuerint

749. Exemples

749. Exemples *of the* I. *Conjugation in* āre.

In the Preſent Tenſe Indicative.

Ego ſto,	*I walk.*	Ego pugno,	*I murmur.*
Tu volas,	*Thou ſtandeſt.*	Tu Juras,	*Thou Fighteſt.*
Quis volat?	*who leapeth?*	Carolus peccar,	*Charles Beggeth.*
Nos ſaltamus,	*We lie.*	Nos Mendicamus,	*We ſwear.*
Vos ambulatis,	*Ye ſwim.*	Vos regnatis,	*Ye ſin.*
Piſces nant,	*The Birds flie.*	Sagæ murmurant,	*Witches reign.*
Ego ululo,	*I bark.*	Ego clamo,	*I breath.*
Tu balas,	*Thou hiſſeſt.*	Tu hias,	*Thou bawleſt:*
Canis latrat,	*The Woolf howls.*	Ventus flat,	*Time haſteth.*
Nos ſibilamus,	*We thunder.*	Nos ſpiramus,	*We gape.*
Vos tonatis,	*Ye ſound.*	Vos regnatis,	*Ye blaze.*
Venti ſonant,	*The Sheep bleat.*	Flammæ flagrant,	*The winds blow.*
I Breakfaſt,	Ego Jejuno.	Ego hio,	*I haſt.*
Thou ſuppeſt,	Tu Jentas.	Tu latras,	*Thou breatheſt.*
The Thief faſteth.	Servus Cœnat.	Serpens ſibilat,	*The Fire bloweth.*
We labour,	Nos ſomniamus.	Nos ſtamus,	*We walk.*
Ye watch,	Vos laboratis.	Vos Cubatis,	*Ye dance.*
The Slaves dream,	Fures vigilant.	Nubes tonant,	*Witches Flie.*

In the Præter Imperfect Tenſe Indicative.

Ego ſtabam,	*I was walking.*	Ego Jurabam,	*I murmured.*
Tu cubabas,	*Thou waſt ſtanding.*	Tu peccabas,	*Thou fightedſt,*
Quis volabat?	*who was leaping?*	Poeta mendicabat,	*The Prince reigned*
Nos ſaltabamus,	*We were lying.*	Nos pugnabamus,	*We ſwore.*
Vos ambulabatis,	*Ye were ſwimming.*	Vos murmurabatis,	*Ye ſinned,*
Piſces natabant,	*The birds were flying.*	Principes regnabant,	*The Poets begged.*
Ego latrabam,	*I howled.*	Ego hiabam,	*I was blowing.*
Tu ululabas,	*Thou Barkedſt.*	Tu clamabas,	*Thou waſt gaping.*
Agnus balabat,	*The ſnake hiſſed.*	Domus flagrabat,	*The army bawled.*
Nos tonabamus,	*We Bleated.*	Nos flabamus,	*We were breathing.*
Vos Sonabatis,	*Ye Thundred.*	Vos feſtinabatis,	*Ye were blazing.*
Angues ſibilabant,	*The trumpets ſounded*	Auræ ſpirabant,	*The ſoldiers haſtened*

I was

I was at break-faſt, Ego Somniabam.	Nos jejunabamus, *we were at work.*
Thou waſt at ſupper, Tu jentabas.	Vos laborabatis, *Ye were watching.*
The Cook was dreaming, Coquus cœnabat.	Stellæ vigilabant, *The Cooks were feaſting.*

In the Future Tenſe Indicative Imperfect.

I will flie, Ego ſaltabo.	*I will fight*, Ego Mendicabo.
Thou wilt lie, Tu ambulabis.	*Thou wilt ſwear*, Tu regnabis.
The tree will ſtand, Anas volabit.	*The Dr. will beg*, Urſus murmurabit
We will leap, Nos ſtabimus.	*We will reign*, Nos pugnabimus.
Ye will walk, Vos nabitis.	*Ye will ſin*, Vos jurabitis.
The Ducks will ſwim, Arbores cubabūt.	*The Bears will murmur*, Doctores peccabunt.

Ego ſibilabo, *I ſhall bleat.*	Ego clamabo. *I ſhall breath.*
Tu balabis, *Thou ſhalt hiſs.*	Tu hiabis, *Thou ſhalt cry.*
Tympanum ſonabit, *The Howlets ſhall howl.*	Follis flabit, *Fire ſhall blaze.*
Nos latrabimus, *We ſhall thunder.*	Nos ſpirabimus, *we ſhall gape.*
Vos tonabitis, *Ye ſhall bark.*	Vos feſtinabitis, *Ye ſhall blow.*
Ululæ ululabunt, *Drums ſhall ſound.*	Ignes flagrabunt, *Years ſhall haſten.*

I will break-faſt. *we will faſt.*	Ego laborabo. Nos jentabimus.
Thou wilt ſup. *Ye will dream.*	Tu Somniabis. Vos cœnabitis.
Death will watch. *Citizens will labour*	Venter jejunabit. Oculi vigilabunt.

In the Imperative Mood.

Tu ambula, *Leap thou.*	Tu ſtato, *Fight thou.*
Paſſer volato, *Let the ſalmon ſwim.*	Miles pugnato, *Let the Robber ſwear.*
Vos ſaltate. *walk ye.*	Vos cubatote. *Labour ye.*
Salmones nanto. *Let ſparrows flie.*	Reges regnanto. *Let Thieves beg.*

Hiſs thou. Tu latra.	Tu jentato. *Sup thou.*
Let the pipe ſound. Aer tonato.	Senex laborato. *Let the maid haſten*
Howl ye. Vos Ululate.	Vos vigilatote. *Faſt ye.*
Let the lambs bleat. Dracones ſibilanto	Sues ſomnianto. *Let butchers bawl.*

In

In the Subjunctive Mood Præſent Tenſe.

O that I may fight.
O that thou maiſt Howl.
O that the Adulterer may beg
O that we might Lie.
O that ye may Flie.
O that the Dears may leap.

O utinam
- Ego Cœnem.
- Tu Jentes.
- Crinis flagret
- Nos nemus
- Vos voletis
- Dies feſtinent

O that
- *I may walk.*
- *Thou mayeſt ſtand.*
- *The Lion may fight.*
- *We might watch.*
- *Ye might faſt.*
- *The Whiſtles might ſound*

Woe if
- *I ſwear.*
- *Thou ſinneſt.*
- *Death haſten*
- *We be burnt.*
- *Ye howl.*
- *Arrows flie.*

Euge ſi
- Ego ſpirem
- Tu Vigiles
- Nemo peccet
- Nos laboremus
- Vos jejunetis
- Preces volent

Tu ſta dum
- Ego clamem.
- Tu ſomnies.
- Uxor murmuret.
- Nos regnemus.
- Vos ſibiletis.
- Canes latrent.

In the Præter Imperfect Subjunctive.

Quis adfuit? cum
- Ego ſaltarem
- Tu ambulares
- Navita naret
- Nos cubaremus
- Vos ſtaretis
- Dracones volarent

Who was by? when
- *I was fighting*
- *Thou waſt begging*
- *Witneſs was ſwearing*
- *We murmured*
- *Ye ſinned*
- *The Judges reigned*

when
- *I Howled.*
- *Thou waſt barking.*
- *The Lamb bleated.*
- *We thundered.*
- *Ye Hiſſed.*
- *The Harps ſounded.*

Cum
- Ego clamarem
- Tu hiares
- Cubile flagraret
- Nos feſtinaremus
- Vos ſpiraretis
- Venti flarent

Cum
- Ego jejunarem
- Tu jentares
- Præceptor cœnaret
- Nos laboraremus
- Vos vigilaretis
- Teſtes ſomniarent

while
- *I was at ſupper.*
- *Thou waſt at breakfaſt*
- *The Biſhop faſted.*
- *We dreamed.*
- *Ye laboured.*
- *Knights watched.*

In the Præter Perfect Tenſe Indicative.

Ego ſteti	*I have fought*	*I have howled.*
Tu cubaviſti	*Thou haſt ſworn*	*Thou haſt barked.*
Hirundo volavit	*Adam hath ſined*	*The ewe lamb bleated.*
Nos ſaltavimus	*We have begged*	*We have thundred*
Vos Ambulaviſtis	*Ye have reigned*	*Ye have ſounded.*
Balænæ naverunt	*Shee-Bears have murmur'd,*	*Vipers have hiſſed.*

Ego clamavi	Ego ſomniavi	*I have ſupped.*
Tu ſpiraviſti	Tu Vigilaviſti	*Thou haſt faſted.*
Horreum flagravit	Herus jentavit.	*The Duke hath dreamed.*
Nos Hiavimus	Nos cœnavimus	*we have laboured.*
Vos feſtinaviſtis	Vos jejunaviſtis	*Ye have waſhed.*
Folles Flaverunt	Miniſtri laboravēre	*The Cats have break-faſted.*

In the Præter Pluperfect Tenſe Indicative.

I had ſtood	Ego pugnaveram	Ego balaveram.
Thou hadſt walked.	Tu juraveras.	Tu latraveras
The Pidgeon had flown	Eva peccaverat	Fæmina ululaverat.
we had danced	Nos regnaveramus	Nos cœnaveramus
Ye had ſwum	Vos murmuraveratis	Vos jejunaveratis.
The Men had lain	Paſtores mendicaverant	Opifices laboraverant.

In the Future Perfect Indicative.

Ego jentavero	*I ſhall have faſted.*
Tu Cœnaveris	*Thou ſhalt have cried.*
Canis latraverit	*The Ram ſhall have leaped.*
Nos ſibilaverīmus	*we ſhall have reigned.*
Vos vigilaverītis	*Ye ſhall have dreamed.*
Mercatores murmuraverint	*The Scholars ſhall have laboured.*

In the Præter Perfect of the Subjunctive.

Si ego ſteterim	*If I have walked*	*If I have fought.*
Si tu cubaveris	*If thou haſt ſtood*	*If thou haſt ſworn.*
Si fringilla volaverit	*If the Bull hath leaped*	*If the Prince have ſinned.*
Si nos ſaltraverimus	*If we have lien*	*If we have begged.*
Si vos ambulaveritis	*If ye have ſwum*	*If ye have reigned.*
Si Balænæ naverint	*If the Swallows have flown,*	*If Nations have murmured*

Si ego jejunaverim	*If I have gaped*	*If I have break-faſted.*
Si tu jentaveris	*If thou haſt bawled*	*If thou haſt ſupped.*
Si Herus Cœnaverit	*If the Dragon hath hiſſed,*	*If the wind hath blown.*
Si nos ſomniaverīmus	*If we have howled,*	*If we have haſtened.*
Si vos laboraverītis	*If ye have bleated,*	*If ye have breathed.*
Si Imperatores vigilaverint,	*If the bells have ſounded,*	*If the Guns have thundred.*

In the Præter Pluperfect Subjunctive.

when I had walked,	Cum ego pugnaviſſem,	*when I had bawled.*
when thou hadſt ſtood,	Cum tu juraviſſes,	*when thou hadſt gaped.*
when the Elephant had leaped,	Cum Eva peccaviſſet,	*when the Queen had ſupped.*
when we had ſwum,	Cum nos mendicaviſſemus,	*when we had break-faſted.*
when ye had flown,	Cum vos regnaviſſetis,	*when ye had faſted.*
when the Cows had lien,	Cum milites murmuraviſſent,	*when the Oxen had labour'd*

In the Future Perfect.

Cum ego ambulavero	*when I ſhall have fought.*
Cum tu ſteteris,	*when thou ſhalt have ſworn.*
Cum Elephas ſaltaverit,	*when the Family ſhall have ſupped.*
Cum nos naverimus	*when we ſhall have break-faſted.*
Cum vos volaveritis,	*when ye ſhall have faſted.*
Cum boves laboraverint,	*when the ſnakes ſhall have hiſſed.*

750. Exemples *of the* II *Conjugation in* ēre.

In the Præſent Impefect Tenſe Indicative.

Ego fleo,	*I laugh.*	Ego hæreo,	*I abide,*
Tu rides,	*Thou weepeſt.*	Tu jaces.	*Thou hangeſt.*
Caput dolet,	*The maid languiſheth*	Fur pendet,	*The Dirt ſticketh.*
Nos mœremus,	*we are pained.*	Nos manemus,	*we lurk.*
Vos gaudetis,	*Ye are ſad.*	Vos latetis,	*Ye lie open.*
Virgines languent,	*Young men rejoyce.*	Campi patent,	*The Cattel lie.*

Ego prandeo	*I freez.*
Tu ardes,	*Thou thrivèſt.*
Luna lucet,	*The Privy ſmels.*
Nos vigemus,	*we dine.*
Vos rigetis,	*Ye ſhine,*
Caſei olent.	*The brands burn.*

In the Præter Imperfect Indicative.

Ego ridebam,	*I did burn.*	Ego jacebam.
Tu dolebas,	*Thou didſt freeze,*	Tu pendebas.
Mater flebat,	*The Herb did ſmell,*	Cœnum h.rebat.
Nos languebamus,	*we did dine,*	Nos manebamus.
Vos gaudebatis,	*Ye did thrive,*	Vos latebatis
Patres mœrebant,	*The Candles did ſhine.*	Horti Patebant.

In the Future Imperfect Indicative.

Ego prandebo,	*I ſhall laugh,*	*I ſhall tarry.*
Tu Vigebis	*Thou wilt weep,*	*Thou ſhalt lurk.*
Candela ucebit,	*The Woman will pine,*	*The Garden ſhall lie open.*
Nos ardebimus,	*we will be in pain.*	*We ſhall hang.*
Vos rigebitis,	*Ye will grieve,*	*Ye ſhall lie.*
Herbæ olebunt,	*The Phyſicions will rejoice,*	*Wheels will ſtick.*

In the Præſent and Future of the Imperative.

Tu ride,	Tu Langueto,	*Do thou dine,*	*Lie thou hid.*
Richardus fleto,	Uxor mœreto,	*Let the Sun ſhine,*	*Let the door be open.*
Vos gaudēte,	Vos pendetote,	*Do ye tarry,*	*Burn ye.*
Senes dolento,	Funes jacento,	*Let old women pine,*	*Let Rivers freeze.*

In the Præſent and Future Imperfect Subjunctive.

O utinam	Ego maneam,	*O that*	*I might thrive,*	*O that*	*I might laugh.*
	Tu lateas,		*Thou mighteſt burn,*		*Thou mighteſt weep.*
	Janua pateat,		*The ſtream would freeze.*		*The child may pine.*
	Nos jaceamus,		*We might rejoice,*		*We may dine,*
	Vos pendeatis,		*Ye might grieve,*		*Ye might ſhine.*
	Rotæ hæreant,		*Teeth might ake,*		*Roſes may ſmell.*

In the Præter Imperfect of the Subjunctive.

Cum ego pranderem,	*When I was joying.*	*When I did ſtick.*
Cum tu vigeres,	*When thou waſt weeping,*	*When thou didſt lie.*
Cum aniſum oleret,	*When the hen was pining,*	*When the baſket hung.*
Cum nos arderemus,	*When we were laughing,*	*When we did lurk.*
Cum vos rigeretis.	*When ye were grieving,*	*When ye lay open.*
Cum gemmæ lucerent,	*When heads were aking,*	*When years remained.*

In

In the Præter Perfecti Tenſe of the Indicative.

Ego vigui,	Ego flevi,	*I have dined.*
Tu riguiſti,	Tu riſiſti,	*Thou haſt pined.*
Robur languit,	Ficus arſit,	*The line hath hung.*
Nos doluimus,	Nos hæſimus,	*We have lien.*
Vos latuiſtis,	Vos manſiſtis,	*Ye have laughed.*
Stabula patuerunt,	Stellæ luxēre.	*Herbs have thrived.*

In the Præter Pluperfecti of the Indicative.

Ego pranderam,	*I had wept,*	*I had burned.*
Tu langueras,	*Thou hadſt grieved,*	*Thou hadſt ſhined.*
Latro pependerat,	*The duſt had ſtuck,*	*The ſtream had frozen.*
Nos jacueramus,	*We had lurked,*	*We had laughed.*
Vos riſeratis,	*Ye had tarried,*	*Ye had thrived.*
Olera viguerant,	*Windowes had lien open,*	*Hearts had languiſhed.*

In the Præter Perfecti Subjuncti.

Si Ego Riſerim,	*If I have dined,*	*When I have burned,*
Si tu fleveris,	*If thou haſt tarryed,*	*When thou haſt laughed.*
Si Crus doluerit,	*If light have lien hid,*	*When ſand hath ſtuck.*
Si nos languerimus,	*If we have ſhined,*	*When we have lien.*
Si vos pependeritis,	*If yee have freezed,*	*When ye have thrived.*
Si fruges viguerint,	*If the trees have lien,*	*When the Onions have ſmell'd*

In the Præter Pluperfecti Subjunctive.

Cum ego pependiſſem,	*When I had frozen.*
Cum tu hæſiſſes,	*When thou hadſt burned.*
Cum vitium latuiſſet,	*When the Kite had dined.*
Cum nos jacuiſſemus,	*When we had ſmelled.*
Cum vos prandiſſetis,	*When ye had tarried.*
Cum lactucæ viguiſſent,	*When ſparks had ſhined.*

In the Future Perfecti Subjunctive.

Cum ego arſero,	*When I ſhall have laughed.*
Cum tu rigueris,	*When thou ſhalt have ſtuck.*
Cum fulgur luxerit,	*When the Plant ſhall have pined.*

Cum nos manſerimus,	*When we ſhall have wept.*
Cum vos latueritis,	*When ye ſhall have aked.*
Cum vitia patuerint,	*When the Ducks ſhall have dined.*

751. Exemples *of Verbs of the* III *Conjugation in* ĕre.

In the Præſent Imperfect Indicative.

Ego curro,	*I creep.*	Ego plaudo.	Ego fugio.
Tu vadis,	*Thou runneſt.*	Tu gemis.	Tu tremis.
Serpens ſerpit,	*The river flows.*	Aſinus rudit,	Pluvia pluit.
Vermis repit,	*We ariſe.*	Mare fremit,	Nix ningit.
Nos cadimus,	*Ye fall.*	Nos furimus,	Nos vivimus.
Vos ſurgitis,	*Travellers go.*	Vos vomitis,	Vos creſcitis.
Fluvii fluunt,	*Snakes wriggle.*	Muſcæ ludunt,	Cucumĕres ſapiunt.

In the Præter Imperfect of the Indicative.

Ego vadebam,	*I did groan,*	*I trembled.*
Tu currebas,	*Thou didſt clap,*	*Thou fleddeſt.*
Oceanus fluebat,	*The Sea did roar,*	*The rain rained.*
Lumbricus repebat.	*The waſp did play,*	*The ſnow ſnowed.*
Nos ſurgebamus,	*We did vomit,*	*we grew.*
Vos cadebatis,	*Ye did rave,*	*Ye lived.*
Serpentes ſerpebant,	*The Aſſes did bray.*	*The melons taſted.*

In the Future Tenſe Imperfect Indicative.

Ego ludam,	*I will ariſe,*	*I ſhall live.*
Tu fures,	*Thou wilt fall,*	*Thou ſhalt grow.*
Quis rudet?	*A vine will creep,*	*Cumine will taſt.*
Leo fremet,	*An Eel will wriggle,*	*A Cloud will rain.*
Nos vomemus,	*We will run.*	*We will tremble.*
Vos gemetis,	*Ye will go.*	*Ye will flee.*
Socii plaudent,	*Waters will flow,*	*The Heavens will ſnow.*

In

In the Imperative Mood.

Tu Surge,	*Creep thou.*	Tu treme,	*Do thou bray.*
Ille cadito,	*Let the Shrub grow.*	Nix ningito,	*Let war roar.*
Vos currite,	*Flee ye.*	Vos vivite,	*Do ye Play.*
Amnes fluunto,	*Let Vipers wriggle.*	Melones ſapiunto,	*Let turtles groan.*

In the Præſent Imperfect of the Subjunctive.

O ſi ego ſurgam,	*O that I may live,*	-- *I may vomit.*
O ſi tu cadas,	*O that thou mayſt grow,*	-- *thou mayſt go.*
O ſi limax repat,	*O that milk may flow,*	-- *the air may ram.*
O ſi nos plaudamus,	*O that we may flee,*	-- *we may rage.*
O ſi vos gemitis,	*O that ye may tremble,*	-- *ye may bray.*
O ſi Fulmina fremant.	*O that Scholars may play,*	-- *the herbs may taſt.*

In the Præter Imperfect of the Subjunctive.

The Maſter bade that	*I ſhould play.*	Pater aderat cum	Ego vomerem.
	Thou ſhouldſt go.		Tu fureres.
	The Cock ſhould live.		Grando caderet.
	We ſhould clap hands.		Nos fremeremus.
	Ye ſhould flee.		Vos gemeretis.
	The ſervants ſhould riſe.		Fontes fluerent.

In the Præter Perfect Indicative.

Ego gemui,	Ego luſi,	*I have lived.*
Tu vomuiſti,	Tu plauſiſti,	*Thou haſt fled.*
Terra tremuit,	Maria vaſit.	*The wave hath flowed.*
Nos crevimus,	Nos Cucurrimus,	*We have crawled.*
Vos fremuiſtis,	Vos cecidiſtis,	*Ye have wriggled.*
Pyra ſapuerunt,	Montes ſurrexerunt,	*The miſts have rained.*

In the Præter Pluperfect Indicative.

I had groaned,	*I had plaied.*	Ego vixeram,
Thou haſt roared,	*Thou hadſt clapped,*	Tu fugeras.
The branch had grown,	*Lightning had run,*	Unda fluxerat
We had vomited,	*We had falleu,*	Nos ſerpieramus.
Ye had trembled,	*Ye had riſen,*	Vos repieratis.
Victuals had taſted,	*Steams had gone,*	Nubes ninxerant.

In the Præter Perfecti Subjunctive.

Si ego tremuerim.	*If I have lived.*
Si tu genueris.	*If thou haſt played.*
Si hirudo vomuerit.	*If a drop hath flowed.*
Si nos fremuerimus.	*If we have fled.*
Si vos creveritis.	*If ye have run.*
Si cibi ſapuerint.	*If Cities have fallen.*

In the Future Perfecti Subjunctive.

When I ſhall have crawled.	Cum ego vixero.
When thou ſhalt have run.	Cum tu plauſeris.
When they ſhall have fled.	Cum æquor fluxerit.
When we ſhall have played.	Cum nos fremuerimus.
When ye ſhall have fallen.	Cum vos tremueritis.
When Oaks ſhall be grown.	Cum Hirudines vomuerint.

752. Exemples *and* Imitations *of the* IV. *Conjugation in* ire.

In the Præſent Tenſe Imperfecti Indicative.

Ego venio.	*I go.*	Ego garrio.	*The Hogs grunt.*
Tu is.	*Thou danceſt.*	Tu mutis.	*The Cows low.*
Aries ſalit.	*The hour cometh.*	Sus grunnit.	*A Lion roars.*
Nos eſurimus.	*We thirſt.*	Bos mugit.	*An Horſe neighs.*
Vos ſititis.	*Ye ſleep.*	Leones rugiunt.	*Maid-ſervants prate.*
Equi dormiunt.	*The Beaſts hunger.*	Equi hinniunt.	*Old wives mutter.*

In the Præter Imperfecti Tenſe Indicative.

I was an hungred.	Ego grunniebam.
Thou waſt a thirſt.	Tu garriebas.
The Ti[illegible] was a ſleep.	Taurus mugiebat.
We were a dancing.	Nos mutiebamus.
Ye were a coming.	Vos hinniebatis.
The Cranes were a going.	Leones rugiebant.

In

In the Future Imperfect Indicative.

Ego ibo.	*I will ſleep.*	*I will grunt.*
Tu venies.	*Thou wilt leap.*	*Thou wilt roare.*
Aqua ſaliet.	*Death will come.*	*A Cow will low.*
Nos dormiemus.	*We will go.*	*We will mutter.*
Vos ſitietis.	*Ye will hunger.*	*Ye will prate.*
Pecudes eſurient.	*The fields will thirſt.*	*Horſes will neigh.*

In the Imperative Mood.

Go thou.	Tu muti.	Tu hinnito.	*Grunt thou.*
Let Matthew come.	Porca grunnito.	Lea rugito.	*Let the Bear mutter.*
Sleep ye.	Vos garrite.	Vos eſuritote.	*Dance ye.*
Let bubbles dance.	Vituli mugiunto.	Fauces ſitiunto.	*Let moles ſleep.*

In the Præſent Imperfect Subjunctive.

Vis tu ut	Ego eſuriam?	*will you that*	*I grunt?*
	Tu ſitias?		*Thou prate?*
	Camelus ſaliat?		*The Aſs ſhould roar?*
	Nos veniamus?		*We ſhould low?*
	Vos eatis?		*Ye ſhould mutter?*
	Talpæ dormiant?		*Calves ſhould neigh?*
Wilt thou that	*I ſhoud dance?*		
	Thou ſhouldſt go?		
	The Judge come?		
	We ſhould ſleep?		
	Ye ſhould thirſt? (ger.		
	Queens ſhould hun-		

In the Præter Imperfect Subjunctive.

Quis aderat cum	Ego garrirem.	*Who was present when*	*I grunted.*
	Tu mutires.		*Thou wert ſleeping.*
	Medicus ſaliret.		*The King was coming.*
	Nos hinniremus.		*We were an hungry.*
	Vos rugiretis.		*Ye were going.*
	Limaces mugirent.		*The Corn was thirſty.*

In the Præter Perfect Indicative.

I have ſlept.	Ego ivi.	*I have muttered.*
Thou haſt thirſted.	Tu veniſti.	*Thou haſt prated.*
The Sow hath grunted.	Domina ſcivit.	*The Lord hath heard.*
We have been hungry.	Nos garrivimus.	*We are come.*
Ye have been dancing.	Vos mutiviſtis.	*Ye are gone.*
Lioneſſes have roared.	Domini audiverunt.	*Ladyes have known.*

In

In the Præter Pluperfecti Tenſe.

Ego ſalueram,	*I was gone.*
Tu dormiveras,	*Thou waſt come.*
Herus ſciverat,	*The Lioneſs had roared,*
Nos eſuriveramus,	*we had heard.*
Vos ſitiveratis,	*Ye had prated.*
Sues gruniverant,	*The waiting men had muttered.*

In the Præter Perfecti Subjunctive.

Si ego eſuriverim.	*If I have prated.*
Si tu ſitiveris,	*If thou haſt grunted.*
Si lepus dormiverit,	*If the Bull hath lowed.*
Si nos venerimus,	*If we have muttered.*
Si vos iveritis,	*If ye have danced.*
Si heri audiverint,	*If the mares have neighed.*

In the Præter Pluperfecti Subjunctive.

when I had heard.	Cum ego iviſſem.
when thou hadſt known,	Cum tu garriviſſes.
when the Fox had ſlept,	Cum ſenex grunniviſſet.
when we had thirſted,	Cum nos mutiviſſemus.
when ye had hungred.	Cum vos ſaluiſſetis.
when the waggons were come,	Cum boves mugiviſſent.

In the Future Perfecti Subjunctive.

Cum ego audivero.	*When I ſhall have gone.*
Cum tu dormiveris,	*When thou ſhalt have known.*
Cum campus ſitiverit,	*When the Swine ſhall have grunted.*
Cum nos eſuriverimus,	*When we ſhall have roared.*
Cum vos garriveritis,	*When ye ſhall have muttered.*
Cum hi rundines venerint,	*When Springs ſhall have bubbled.*

753. Exemples

753. Exemples *of Verbs of the* I. *Conjugation in* āri.

In the Præſent Imperfect Indicative.

Ego moror.	*I idle.*	Ego epulor.
Tu vagaris.	*Thou fiſheſt.*	Tu venaris.
Venator venatur.	*The Miniſter prays.*	Anas piſcatur.
Nos piſcamur.	*we tarry.*	Nos precamur.
Vos Otiamini.	*Ye hunt.*	Vos moramini.
Sacerdotes precantur.	*Cattle wander.*	Teſtes teſtantur.

In the Præter Imperfect Indicative.

I did wander.	Ego epulabar.	*I took my eaſe.*
Thou didſt idle.	Tu piſcabaris.	*Thou didſt wander.*
The Fiſher did fiſh.	Imperator venabatur.	*The Church did pray.*
we did banquet.	Nos otiabamur.	*we did hunt.*
Ye did hunt.	Vos morabamini.	*Ye did banquet.*
The hours tarried.	Eccleſiæ precabantur.	*The Cooks did witneſs.*

In the Future Tenſe Indicative.

		Paſſively.
Ego venabor.	*I will tarry.*	Ego amabor.
Tu piſcaberis.	*Thou wilt wander.*	Tu damnaberis.
Rex epulabitur.	*The wolf will hunt.*	Magiſtratus creabitur.
Nos otiabimur.	*we will witneſs.*	*we ſhall be condemned.*
Vos morabimini.	*Ye will pray.*	*Ye ſhall be beloved.*
Tauri vagabuntur.	*Feet will wander.*	*Magiſtrates ſhall be created.*

In the Future Imperative.

Pray thou.	Tu piſcare.	*Be thou loved.*
Let George idle.	Gilbertus venator.	*Let a King be created.*
Tarry ye.	Vos epulamini.	*Be ye beloved.*
Let clouds wander.	Paſtores otiantor.	*Let Robbers be condemned.*

In the Præſent Imperfect Subjunctive.

O ſi ego epuler.	*O if I could tarry.*	*when I am loved.*
O ſi tu otieris.	*O if thou couldſt pray.* (der.	*When thou art condemned.*
O ſi tempus moretur.	*O if the School could wan-*	*When a Prince is created.*
O ſi nos venemur.	*O if we could be idle.*	Cum nos amemur.
O ſi vos precemini.	*O if ye could banquet.*	Cum vos damnemini.
O ſi Socii teſtentur.	*O if the Scholars could fi/h.*	Cum Principes creentur.

In the Præter Imperfect Subjunctive.

Cum ego otiarer.	*when I was praying.*
Cum tu epulareris.	*When thou waſt wandering.*
Cum Anna moraretur.	*When the night tarryed.*
Cum nos venaremur.	*When we were creating, being created.*
Cnm vos teſtaremini.	*When ye were in being loved.*
Cum Apoſtoli piſcarentur.	*When the accuſed were a condemning.*

754. Exemples *of the* II. *Conjugation in* ēri.

In the Præſent Tenſe Indicative.

Ego videor.	*I am admoniſhed.*	Ego tueor.
Tu moveris.	*Thou art ſeen.*	Tu Vereris.
Infans fovetur.	*The wave is moved.*	Medicus medetur.
Nos mordemur.	*we are cheriſhed.*	*we fear.*
Vos monemini.	*Ye are feared.*	*Ye look.*
Morbi timentur.	*Legs are bitten.*	*Phyſicions heal.*

In the Præter Imperfect Tenſe Indicative.

Ego medebar.	*I ſeemed.*	*we were admoniſhed.*
Tu tuebaris.	*Thou waſt moved.*	*Ye were cheriſhed.*
Homicida verebatur.	*The Cat was bitten.*	*Armies were feared.*

In the Future Imperfect Tenſe Indicative.

I ſhall be bitten.	Ego docebor.
Thou wilt be feared.	Tu teneberis.
The Ape will be cheriſhed.	Jus ſorbebitur.
We ſhall be admoniſhed.	Nos verebimur.
Ye ſhall be moved.	Vos medebimini.
Plays ſhall be ſeen.	Chirurgi tuebuntur.

In the Imperative Mood.

Tu verere.	Tu tuetor.	*Be thou feared.*
Terra movetor.	Cerva mordetor.	*Let the Book be held.*
Vos medemini.	Vos videminor.	*Be ye admoniſhed.*
Diſcipuli docentor.	Puellæ foventor.	*Let Rivers be ſupt up.*

In the Præſent Subjunctive.

I will that
- *I be feared.*
- *Thou be admoniſhed.*
- *The mount be moved.*
- *We be taught.*
- *Ye be held.*
- *Snakes be cheriſhed.*

Judices volunt
- Ut ego fovear.
- Ut tu videaris.
- Ut adulter teneatur.
- Ut nos vereamur.
- Ut vos medeamini.
- Ut corda moveantur.

In the Præter Imperfect Subjunctive.

Rex juſſit ut
- Ego tuērer.
- Tu viderēris.
- Hoſtis teneretur.
- Nos vereremur.
- Vos timeremini.
- Virtutes foverentur.

The Queen commanded that
- *I ſhould heal.*
- *Thou ſhouldſt be taught.*
- *The rock ſhould be moved.*
- *We ſhould be admoniſhed.*
- *Ye ſhould be bitten.*
- *Nobles ſhould be feared.*

755. Exemples *of the* III. *Conjugation in* i.

In the Præſent Indicative.

Ego labor.	*I do feed.*	Ego emor.
Tu graderis.	*Thou doſt ſpeak.*	Tu venderis.
Infans naſcitur.	*The day ſlides.*	Res agitur.
Nos morimur.	*we do ſtep.*	*we are ſold.*
Vos veſcimini.	*Ye do die.*	*Ye are bought.*
Coqui loquuntur.	*Lambs are born.*	*Buſineſſes are done.*

In the Præter Imperfecti Tenſe Indicative.

I did ſlip.	Ego moriebar.	Ego vendebar.
Thou didſt ſtep.	Tu naſcebaris.	Tu emebaris.
The Camel did feed.	Fama loquebatur.	Fabula agebatur.
we did ſpeak.	Nos veſcebamur.	*We were bought.*
Ye were a dying.	Vos gradiebamini.	*Ye were ſold.*
Calves were born.	Pedes labebantur.	*Plays were acted.*

In the Future Indicative.

I ſhall feed.	Ego loquar.	*I will be ſold.*
Thou ſhalt die.	Tu Querēris.	*Thou wilt be bought.*
The year will ſlide.	Filius naſcetur.	*A letter will be read.*
we will walk.	Nos moriemur.	Nos vendemur.
Ye will ſpeak.	Vos veſcemini.	Vos ememini.
Animals will be born.	Tempora labentur.	Biblia legentur.

In the Imperative.

Tu loquere.	Tu queritor.	*Be thou born.*
Amnis labitor.	Merx emitor.	*Let a page be read.*
Vos veſcimini.	Vos gradiminor.	*Speak ye.*
Rei moriuntor.	Merces venduntor.	*Let Sheep be bought.*

In

In the Preſent Subjunctive.

O that I might feed.	O utinam ego moriar.
O that thou mighteſt die.	O utinam tu labaris.
O that a daughter might be born.	O utinam agna naſcatur.
O that we might ſpeak.	O utinam nos gradiamur.
O that ye might ſlip.	O utinam vos veſcamini.
O that Infants might walk.	O utinam pari loquantur.

In the Præter Imperfect Tenſe Subjunctive.

Quis adfuit	Cum ego laberer.	*Abraham was away when*	*I was feeding.*
	Cum tu gradereris.		*Thou waſt ſpeaking.*
	Cum virgo moreretur.		*The Snail walked.*
	Cum nos loqueremur.		*We were born.*
	Cum vos naſceremini.		*Ye did ſlip.*
	Cum boves veſcerentur.		*The young men were dying.*

756. Exemples *of the* IV *Conjugation in* iri.

In the Præſent Tenſe Indicative.

Ego punior.	*I begin.*	*I riſe.*
Tu audiris.	*Thou lyeſt.*	*Thou art puniſhed.*
Scriptura finitur.	*England is puniſhed.*	*The ſound is heard.*
Nos ordimur.	*We are ended.*	*We do lie.*
Vos mentimini.	*Ye are heard.*	*Ye do begin.*
Stellæ oriuntur.	*Quarrels ariſe.*	*Wars are ending.*

In the Præter Imperfect Indicative.

Ego audiebar.	*I did begin.*
Tu puniebaris.	*Thou didſt lie.*
Cœna finiebatur.	*The Moon did riſe.*
Nos mentiebamur.	*We were puniſhed.*
Vos ordiebamini.	*Ye were heard.*
Minæ oriebantur.	*Tumults were ended.*

In the Future Iudicative.

Ego mentiar.	*I ſhall begin.*
Tu punieris.	*Thou ſhalt be heard.*
Bellum orietur.	*Peace will be ended.*
Nos ordiemur.	*We will tell lies.*
Vos audiemini.	*Ye will be puniſhed.*
Rixæ finientur.	*Dangers will ariſe.*

In the Imperative.

Tu ordire.	*Do thou lie.*	Tu auditor.
Nemo mentitor.	*Let vice be puniſhed.*	Sermo finitor.
Vos punimini.	*Do ye begin.*	Vos mentiminor.
Pugnæ oriuntor.	*Let cries be heard.*	Regna puniuntor.

In the Præſent Tenſe Subjunctive.

Quis jubet ut	Ego audiar ?	*The uſher commands that*	*I ſhould begin.*
	Tu ordiaris ?		*Thou ſhouldeſt be heard.*
	Lux oriatur ?		*The Sentence be ended.*
	Nos mentiamur ?		*We ſhould be puniſhed.*
	Vos puniamini ?		*Ye ſhould lie.*
	Fabulæ finiantur ?		*Delays ſhould ariſe.*

In the Præter Imperfecti Tenſe Subjunctive.

Quid ſi	Ego mentirer ?	*What if*	*I were head ?*
	Tu ordireris ?		*Thou wert puniſhed ?*
	Mora oriretur ?		*Sport were ended ?*
	Nos audiremur ?		*We did lie ?*
	Vos puniremini ?		*Ye did begin ?*
	Opera finirentur ?		*Jokes aroſe ?*

Qu. *Is this all that is to be learned about the* Second Phraſe ?

757. *Anſ.* There are three things to be yet obſerved about this *Second Phraſe.*

N.B. I. *Not only Nouns and Pronouns Subſtantive, but whtaever denotes* That which *is or* doth *or is* done *is accounted for a Nominative Caſe to the Verb.*

So I. the Gerund in *Dum* is the Nominative Caſe to the Verb.

Qu. *what*

Qu. *What is the Gerund in* Dum?

758. *Anſ.* The Gerund in *Dum* Is the Neuter Gender of the Participle in *Dus* ſet alone without a Subſtantive as, *amandum, docendum, legendum,* and it ſignifies that an act muſt be done, as,

Amandum eſt,	*Loving muſt be, there's a neceſſity to love.*
Scribendum eſt.	*There muſt be writing.*
Edendum erat,	*There ſhould have been eating.*
Cœnandum fuit,	*There ſhould have been ſupping.*
Canendum fuerat,	*There ought to have had been ſinging.*
Fugiendum erit,	*There will be neceſſity to flee.*

There	is / was / hath been / had been / will be	a neceſſity	to learn. / to beat. / to dine. / to run. / to ſtay.

Agendum eſt.
Studendum erat.
Ordiendum fuit.
Durandum fuerat.
Pergendum erit.

759. 2. The Verb Infinite is oft the Nominative to the Verb when it expreſſes what *is, does* or *is done*, as

Feſtinare juvat.	Feſtinaviſſe decuit.	*To ſwear ſhameth.*
Saltare pudet.	Saltaviſſe pigebat.	*To play wearieth.*
Peccare piget.	Peccaviſſe pudebit.	*To pray helpeth.*
Studere tædet.	Studuiſſe juvabit.	*To ſing becometh.*
Mendicare pudebat.	Mendicaſſe nocebat.	*To write is allowed.*
Piſcari licebat.	Siluiſſe cruciabit.	*To be angry hurteth.*
Silere decet.	Juraviſſe puduit.	*To have learned helpeth.*

Qu. *What is the Second thing to be obſerved?*

760. *Anſ.* II. Two Nominative Caſes Singular coupled together ſpeak of more than one, and ſo being of the Plural Number, muſt have a Verb Plural, as, *Benjaminus & Samuel ludunt.* Where

Obſerve, 1. I and another is as much as We *Nos* the Firſt Perſon Plural.

2. Thou and another is as much as Ye *Vos* the Second Perſon Plural.

3. He and another is as much as They *Illi* the Third Perſon Plural.

Exemples.	Imitations.
Ego et tu vigilamus.	*I and the King dine.*
Ego et Joannes jentabamus.	*I and the Judge fought.*
Ego et Samuel peccavimus.	*I and thou have ſworn.*

Tu & Thomas somniatis.	*Thou and the Cat fast.*
Tu & Canis latratis.	*Thou and William sup.*
Tu & Tobias garritis.	*Thou and Paul are loved.*
Ille & Ulula ululant.	*James and John do fish.*
Equus & Equa hinniunt.	*The Sun and the Moon shine.*
Domus & Horreum ardebant.	*The Thief and Robber will hang.*
Ego & Daniel venabimur.	*I and Charles will fish.*
Tu & David sequemini.	*Thou and Luke shall be by.*
Lepus & Cuniculus morientur.	*The Trout and Perch will bite.*
Ego & Pater canemus.	*I and the Mistris sipped.*
Tu & Frater salietis.	*Thou and the Lady drank.*
Mater & Soror ridebunt.	*The Man and the Maid fuddled.*

Qu *Which is the third thing to be observed in the Second Phrase?*

761. *Ans.* III. Note, that if the Verb be Infinite, the word that should be of the Nominative must be put into the Accusative Case, and it is mostly Englished with That before it, as, Verba infiniti modi pro nominativo accusativum antecedentes statuunt.

Apparet	Angelos esse.	*It is clear that*	*An Angel is present.*
	Jesum fuisse.		*The Devil is absent.*
	Adamum peccasse.		*Eve hath eaten.*
Videtur	Solem lucere.	*It seemeth that*	*The Earth standeth.*
	Lunam oriri.		*The Heaven moveth.*
	Stellam ardere.		*The Dew falleth.*
Ego vidi	Montes surgere.	*I have seen*	*Snails to run.*
	Valles crescere.		*Fishes to fly.*
	Colles vagari.		*Birds to swim.*

Ego puto me esurire.	*We think that we understand.*
Tu putas te sitire.	*Ye think that ye know.*
Is putat se epulari.	*They think that they beleive.*

§ III. *The*

§ III. The Third Phraſe.

Qu. *Which is the* Third *Phraſe?*

762. *Anſ.* The *Third* Phraſe is that whereby we expreſs the *Doing* or *Acting upon ſomething*, as facere opus, *to do a work*; amare bellum, *to love war*; aperire ōs, *to open the mouth.*

Qu. *Which are the two words that make up this Third Phraſe?*

763. *Anſ.* The Firſt word of the Third Phraſe is a Verbe Active that ſignifies *to do*, or act upon ſomewhat.

The Second is a Subſtantive of the Accuſative caſe denoting the thing done or acted upon.

Qu. *Then it ſeems that not all Verbs uſed in the former Phraſe may be uſed in this?*

764. *Anſ.* 1 No Verbs Neuter that betoken to *be*, as, Eſſe, Adeſſe. Nor 2. any Verbs Paſſive that betoken to *ſuffer*, or *be acted upon.* Nor 3. Verbs Active that betoken to *do*, if they be Intranſitive, as, Studere, Favere, can be uſed in this Third Phraſe, but only ſuch Verbs Active as are tranſitive.

Qu. *What is a Verb Active Tranſitive?*

765. *Anſ.* A Verb Active Tranſitive is that which ſo betokens to do, or act, that the Act paſſes upon ſome thing, and ſome thing is acted upon, as, *Verberave canem. Verberare* betokens to do, to beat; The action of beating paſſes upon the Dog; The Dog is the thing acted upon, or beaten; and therefore is of the Accuſative Caſe.

Qu. *Give ſome* Exemples *of this Third Phraſe?*

766. *Anſ.* ——

I. Exemples of the Third Phraſe.

Deus creavit mundum,	*The world is the thing* created.
Dominus formavit hominem.	*A Man is the thing* formed.
Homo coluit hortum,	*The Garden is the thing* tilled.
Diabolus tentavit Evam.	Pomum perdidit homines.
Eva ſefellit Adamum.	Chriſtus vicit Diabolum.
Adamus edit pomum.	Nos invenimus gratiam.

Qu. *Give the* Rule *of the Third Phraſe?*

767. *Anſ.* ——

II. The Rule of the Third Phrase.

To express upon what any thing acts.

I. Put down a word Active Transitive. And II. add to it the Substantive Name of the thing that is acted upon, in the Accusative Case.

Qu. *Give now some* Imitations? *Verba transeuntia cum accusativo*
768. *Ans.* Here are —— *quo gaudent, sive actiua, sive communia, sive deponentia, exceptis Neutris passivum*

III. Imitations of the Third Phrase with more Exemples.

Quid ego ago?	*What do we do?*
Ego patior verbera.	*I lead a wife.*
Tu finis minas.	*Thou beginneſt a ſpeech.*
Hiems orditur annum.	*Night endeth the day.*
Aura movet folia.	*Water thruſteth gravel.*
Nos mutamus veſtes.	*We ſtop paſſengers.*
Vos ducitis uxores.	*Ye ſuffer diſgrace.*
Rupes ſiſtunt flumina.	*Words move anger.*
Aquæ trudunt ſaxa.	*Men change ſhoes.*
Ego quatiebam corylum.	*I gathered mulberries.*
Tu legebas nuces.	*Thou climbeſt the boughs.*
Adamus ſcandebat malum.	*James roaſted the Plums.*
Nos edebamus mala.	*We ſhook the oak.*
Vos vorabatis pyra.	*Ye eat the ſtrawberries.*
Agricolæ torrebant caſtaneas.	*The birds ſwallowed the cherryes.*
Herba dabit florem.	*Gardens will give flowers.*
Frutices prement herbas.	*A tree will preſs a ſhrub.*
Arbores mittent radices.	*A root will bring forth a ſtock.*
Radix firmabit arborem.	*A ſtock will bear branches.*
Cortex cinget ramum.	*Corn will cover the fields.*
Hortus feret olera.	*Pot-herbs will adorn the garden.*
Arva parient fruges.	*A cucumber will kill melons.*
Lactuca teget hortum.	*Cumin will begirt lettuces.*
Cuminum necabit cucumeres.	*Boughs will cleave the rinde.*
Tu volve dolium.	*Do thou caſt the arrow.*
Servus vertito veru.	*Let the ſea roul waves.*
Rex regit regionem.	*Kings will rule Kingdoms.*
Vos augete doctrinam.	*Let mony encreaſe honour.*

Fabri

Fabri fingunto ferrum.	*Do ye turn verſes.*
Milites jacient tela.	*Bakers will frame bread.*
Poetæ facient carmina.	*Do thou make a fable.*
Tu ſcribe epiſtolam.	*Do ye write Epiſtles.*
Avus mittet nummum.	*Parents will ſend horſes.*
Pes fulſit menſam.	*Walls have defended the houſe,*
Arundo fixit damam.	*Privies have offended the noſe.*
Peccatum minuit gloriam.	*The Seaman hath preſerved the Ship.*
Amicus defendit amicum.	*A mother hath nouriſhed an Infant.*
Hoſtis offendit hoſtem.	*Arrows have ſhot flags.*
Angeli ſervaverunt homines.	*Lambs have ſucked ews.*
Jeſus ſalvavit animas.	*Populars have prop'd the Vines.*
Infans ſuxit uber.	*The Apoſtles have ſaved nations.*
Matres nutriverunt infantes.	*Crimes have leſſened credit.*
Ego ſpirabo ſpiritum.	*A roſe will breath a ſmell.*
Tu halabis odorem.	*Lightnings will burn a Cedar.*
Ignis uret crura.	*Eyes will ſee a colour.*
Crus ſentiet dolorem.	*An ear will hear a ſound.*
Nos videbimus colores.	*The tongue will taſt gall.*
Vos audietis ſonos.	*A finger will touch a toe.*
Naſus odorabitur odores.	*Cats will ſmell a mouſe.*
Palatum guſtabit ſapores.	*Wort will ſteam forth a ſteam.*
Manus tangent tactilia.	*Senſes will feel pleaſure.*
Tu ambi virginem.	*Do thou view the flock.*
Senex ambito anum.	*Let the maid look to the geeſe.*
Maritus gignito filios.	*Let the wife cheriſh children.*
Amor generato amorem.	*Do you wooe honour.*
Vos fovete parentes.	*Do you wooe wives.*
Vos alitote nepotes.	*Let hunters mantain dogs.*
Oves pariunto agnos.	*Let bulls beget calves.*
Oculi tuentor cœlum.	*Let a cow bring forth a bullock.*
Paſtores luſtranto pecudes.	*Let dogs get dogs.*
Cœlum cingit ætherem.	*Clouds will begirt the mountains.*
Æther claudit aerem.	*Mountains will encloſe the vallies.*
Aer tegit aquam.	*Vallies will hide flocks.*
Aqua tundit terram.	*Flocks will cover meadows.*
Terra celat orcum.	*Travellers will fear rains.*
Orcus mergit animas.	*Rains will drown minerals.*
Animæ metuunt diabolum.	*Waves will thump the ſhores.*

Diaboli fugiunt angelos.	*Skiffs will avoid the waves.*
Angeli ſumunt corpora.	*An Ape will take a filbert.*
Saxa fregerant glaciem.	*The ice had broken the ax.*
Sal ſaliverat carnem.	*The Cooks had ſalted the meat.*
Alumen pupugerat palatum.	*Pepper will bite the tongue.*
Scintilla accenderat ſulfur.	*Brimſtone will kindle a candle.*
Calor fugaverat frigora.	*Colds drive away flies.*
Ora ſpiraverant ſpiritum.	*Bellows breath a wind.*
Turbo turbaverat æquora.	*Waſps will diſturb bees.*
Glarea vexaverat dentes.	*Scholars have vext the maſter.*
Scrupus læſerat calcem.	*A Bat will hurt ſhoulders.*
Tegulæ tegunt tecta.	*The Judge judgeth the robbers.*
Coquus coquit cibos.	*The laws hang up thieves.*
Tonſor tondet capillos.	*A witneſs accuſeth a witch.*
Hortulanus fodit pomarium.	*Husbandmen reap ſtanding Crops.*
Agricola colit agros.	*Gardiners plant a plant.*
Molitor molit hordea.	*Hands crop the fruits.*
Doctor docet populum.	*Merchants ſell ware.*
Diſcipulus diſcit ſcripturam.	*The day follows the night.*
Scriba ſcribit paginam.	*Thieves ſteal houſhold-ſtuff.*
	Horns adorn the head.
Terebra terit dolia.	*Drops wear a ſtone.*
Os oſculatur labia.	*The brother will kiſs the ſiſter.*
Arenæ purgant cultrum.	*Soap will cleanſe cloths.*
Tenebræ ſequentur caliginem.	*Praiſe follows ſtudy.*
Aura tollet plumam.	*Whirld-winds will lift up ſhips.*
Vitra arcebunt ventos.	*Guns will keep off thieves.*
Palma fricabit palmam.	*A foot was rubbing a foot.*
Infans inquinabit inguina.	*A ſow fouleth the poſts.*
Serva terget nates.	*Garments wipe the ſows.*
Coqui verrunt culinam.	*Briſtles bruſh garments.*

Qu. *Are only Nouns, and Pronouns Subſtantive of the Accuſative Caſe after a Verb Tranſitive?*

769. *Anſ.* Not only Nouns, and Pronouns Subſtantive are of the Accuſative Caſe after Verbs tranſitive, but whatever other word or words betoken the thing *done* or *acted upon* are to be accounted as the Accuſative Caſe to the Verb Tranſitive.

So

So I. an Infinitive Verb alone is the Accuſative after the Verb, as

Ego volo ambulare, where	*to walk.*	is the thing	*willed,*	and therefore is accounted of the Accuſative Caſe.
Tu amas jacere,	*to ly*		*loved,*	
Franciſcus cupit dormire,	*to ſleep*		*deſired,*	
Nos nolumus vigilare,	*to be awake*		*nilled,*	
Vos ſuadetis ſurgere,	*to ariſe*		*adviſed*	
Pueri malunt cubare,	*to ly down*		*choſen,*	

Imitations with more Exemples.

Ego nolo jejunare.	*I deſire to learn.*
Tu vis edere.	*Thou art unwilling to labour.*
Præceptor amat docere.	*The uſher is willing to endeavour.*
Nos malumus ludere.	*We advize to venture.*
Vos cupitis vagari.	*Ye love to be at eaſe.*
Doctores ſuadent cavere.	*Shoemakers chuſe to fuddle.*
Ego ſolebam morari.	*I was learning to hunt.*
Tu eligebas feſtinare.	*Thou waſt wont to follow.*
Veſpertilio cupiebat volare.	*The Hare choſe to flee.*
Nos diſcebamus nare.	*We forbad to kill.*
Vos timebatis tentare.	*Ye deſired to fiſh.*
Gurgites vetabant audere.	*The Salmons feared to bite.*
Tu memento mori.	*Don't thou ſteal.*
Puer nolito peccare.	*Let a Scholar beware to lie.*
Vos conamini videri.	*Dread ye to ſwear.*
Diſcipuli verentor offendere.	*Let men endeavour to obey.*
Bubo tentavit volaviſſe.	*We ought to have faſted.*
Dominus cogitavit peperciſſe.	*I hoped to have drunk.*
Latrones ſperaverunt fugiſſe.	*Thou thoughteſt to have ſupped.*
Adamus debuit caviſſe.	*You deſired to have lurked.*

Qu. *Which is the ſecond thing put after Verbs Tranſitive as an Accuſative Caſe?*

770. *Anſ.* II. An Infinite Verb with an Accuſative before it, (ſee Rule 761.) is put oft as an Accuſative after a Verb Tranſitive, as,

Nos ſcimus leonem rugire.	*That a Lion roars*	is the thing	*known.*
Ego video torrem ardere,	*That a brand burns*		*ſeen.*
Tu negas tubam ſonare.	*That a trumpet ſounds*		*denied.*
Vos putatis ſolem ſtare.	*That the ſun ſtands ſtill*		*thought.*

Imitations with more Exemples.

I know that the King comes.
Thou feeleſt that the fire burns.
The ear heareth that Clouds thunder.
We underſtand that death haſteth.
Ye believe that Ignorance excuſeth.
Men phantſy that ſtars fall.

Ego puto me valere.
Tu credis te ægrotare.
Petrus ſentit ſe ſitire.
Nos opinamur vos furere.
Vos ſcitis nos ſomniare.
Capita ſentiunt ſe dolere.

Doctores docent voluptatem nocere.
Vultus arguit te timere.
Adulter ſperat ſe latere.
Scripturæ vetant nos peccare.
Nives monſtrant hiemem adeſſe.
Flores probant ver eſſe.
Facies prodit te mœrere.
Tu dicis nos otiari.
Nos reſpondemus te mentiri.

We perceive that
Fiſh are ſilent.
Bears do mutter.
Foxes howl
Horſes neigh.
Bullocks low.
Serpents hiſs.
Lambs bleat.
Hogs grunt.
Organs ſound.

Rex juſſit homicidas condemnari.
Præceptor cupit ſcholam doceri.
Ego patior me moneri.
Quis velit ludum finiri?
Paſtor queritur oves teneri.
Apoſtolus teſtatur charitatem laudari.
Mercator juravit pecuniam deberi.
David noluit filium puniri.
Mos ſuadet annulum haberi.

Poetæ canunt arbores ſaltaviſſe.
Hiſtoriæ narrant terram tremuiſſe.
Gelu probabit amnem riguiſſe.
Ego memini me eſuriviſſe.
Tu obliviſceris te ægrotaviſſe.
Vos recordamini nos potaviſſe.
Diſcipuli clamabunt magiſtrum ſapuiſſe.
Quis audivit noctuam ceciniſſe.
Nemo negabit gigantes fuiſſe.

Death makes out that ſin hath reigned.
Dwarfs do ſhew that monſters are born.
We ſee that oyſters gape.
The maſter commands that you riſe.

The ſcripture hath comanded that we watch.
Senſe teacheth that winds blow.
Phyſicions affirm that the Plague killeth.
Men bilieve that riches bleſs.
Peter writeth that Sarah obeyed.
Who is ignorant that a key locketh?
Who doubteth that villany harmeth.

Scripturæ aiunt gigantes ſtruxiſſe turrem.
Leges jubent judicem condemnare fures.
Pueri ſciunt aquam extinguere ignem.

Wiſdom teacheth that grace helpeth art.
Believe thou that skill adorneth the mind.
Remember ye that virtue ſubdueth ignorance.
We have read that Biſhops have knockt down Idols.
Ye underſtand that Prieſts have ſet up altars.
Who will believe that chance made the world?

Orcus arguit homines mereri pœnas.
Judex jubet teſtem accuſare reum.
Petrus negavit ſe noviſſe Dominum.
Leges volunt doctores docere populum.

§ IV. The Fourth Phraſe.

Qu. *Which is the* Fourth *Phraſe?*

771. *Anſ.* The *Fourth* Phraſe is that whereby we do by an Adverb either ask whether, or affirm that, or deny that, or expreſs when, or where, or how, &c. any thing is, does, or is done.

Qu. *Which are the two words that make up this Fourth Phraſe?*

772. *Anſ.* The *Firſt* word is the *Verb* ſet down by the Second Phraſe, the *Second* is an *Adverb* added to it.

Qu. *Give ſome* Exemples *of this?*

773. *Anſ.* ——

I. Exemples

I. Exemples of the Fourth Phraſe.

Qu.	Num Rex venit?	Regina ſaltem veniet.	*Perhaps ſhe ſtruck.*
	An Regina venit?	Princeps non veniet.	*Yes he fights.*
	Venitne Dux?	Judices haud veniunt.	*She almoſt ſtruck him.*
Anſ.	Rex fortaſſe veniet.	Proceres vix venient.	*He at leaſt ſmote her.*
	Næ Regina veniet.	*what? doth the Husband*	*No he fought not.*
	Dux fere vēnit.	*fight?*	
		Doth the wife ſtrike or no? She ſcarcely toucht him.	

Qu.	Unde vos fugitis?	Qu.	*Whence flew the Birds?*
Anſ.	Ego fugio hinc.	*Anſ.*	*The Woodcock flew hence.*
	Tu fuge inde.		*The Pheaſants flew thence.*
	Fur cupit fugere iſtinc.		*The Black-bird will flie thence.*
	Muſca non fugiet illinc.		*The Turtle will not go thence.*

Qu. *Which is the* Rule *of the Fourth Phraſe?*
774. *Anſ.* —

II. The Rule of the Fourth Phraſe.

When you uſe an Adverb to ask, affirm, or deny, and to ſhew when, where, whence, how, how oft, why &c. any thing is, doth, or ſuffereth.
I. Let the Verb be ſet down according to the two foregoing Rules,
II. And to it add the ~~Verb~~*Adverb.*
Qu. *Give ſome* Exerciſes *of this?*
775. *Anſ.* —

III. Imitations of the Fourth Phraſe with more Exemples.

Qu.	Quo vas vadetis?	*whither go the beaſts?*
Anſ.	Ego vadebam huc.	*The Mule ſteppeth hither?*
	Servus ibat illuc.	*The Foxes walk thither.*
	Nos vadimus iſtuc.	*Hogs were running thither.*

Qu.	Ubi vos habitatis?	*where are the members placed?*
Anſ.	Ego habito hic.	*The head is placed there.*
	Filia habitat ibi,	*The forehead appears here.*
	Nos habitavimus illic.	*The nails grow without.*
	Nemo ſolet habitare iſtic.	*The heart lies hid within.*

Bove

Boves cubant foris. — *Blood flows every where.*
Feles jacent intus. — *The bladder lies there.*
Si mures ſint uſquam. — *The toes ſtand afar off.*
Catus quieſcit nuſquam. — *The ribs are nigh.*
Saxa ſtant ubique. — *If pain rage any where.*
Fulmen murmurat procul. — *Pleaſure is perceived no where.*
Fulgura lucent prope.

Qu. Quando tu ſumis alimentum.? — *When write ye the lettters?*
Anſ. Ego prandeo nunc. — *I am now a writing.*
Nos jam nunc ſumimus cibum. — *I am even now a preparing.*
Vos hodie non bibitis. — *I ſend the letters to day.*
Nos ſemper ſpernimus cereviſiam. — *You always loſe the time.*

Qu. Quando vos ſurrexiſtis? — *When fell the ſnow?*
Anſ. Ego ſurrexi, tunc tum. — *The ſnow fell then.*
Cum præceptor ſurrexit. — *When the rains fell.*
Hypodidaſcalus jam tum ſurrexerat. — *Hail had fallen even then.*
Nemo ſurrexit heri. — *The dew fell of old.*
Pater dudum ſurrexit. — *The drops had fallen long ſince.*
Nos olim ſurreximus. — *Nothing fell yeſterday.*

Qu. Quando facietis opera? — *When will you build habitations?*
Anſ. Pictor pinget picturam cras. — *The Carpenter will build an houſe ſtrait.*
Sutor ſuet calceos mox. — *I will raiſe a cottage to morrow.*
Pannifex faciet pannum ſtatim. — *Who ever will inhabit a cave? (lace.*
Sartor ſarciet veſtes aliquando. — *The Prince will ſometime enter the Pa-*
Quis unquam texuit ocreas? — *The Souldiers will never found the*
Molitores nunquam molunt pulverem. — *Caſtle.*

Qu. Quamdiu hiems durabit? — *How long will the ſummer abide?*
Anſ. Hiems diu manebit. — *The ſummer will endure long.*
Frigora parumper durabunt. — *The heat will vex us a while.*
Donec ver venerit. — *Until the winter come.*

Qu. Quomodo diſcipuli gerunt ſe? — *How do the the boys learn?*
Anſ. Thomas gerit ſe bene. — *William learneth very well.*
Ego nunquam geſſi me male. — *I always read ill.*
Nathanael ſcribit nitide. — *John painteth neatly.*

Qu. Quoties tu legiſti biblia? — *How oft have you offended?*
Anſ. Ego lego ſcripturas interdum. — *I fought once.*
Vos raro tangitis biblia. — *I beat a boy again.*

Nos ſæpe legimus Johannem.	*The boy admoniſhed me twice.*
Num ſemel legiſti Lucam?	*The maſter hath chaſtened me oft.*
Ego bis legi Marcum.	*I now and then do ly.*
Viſne tu legere iterum?	*I have ſeldom ſtudied.*
Ego cupio legere ter.	*I have thrice tippled.*
Qu. Quare vos ſedetis ſimul?	*Why do ye not eat together?*
Cur vos ſtudetis una?	*Wherefore ſup ye aſunder?*
Anſ. Non licet ſtudere ſeorſim.	*It becomes us not to eat together.*
Qu. Quorſum vos aratis littus?	*To what purpoſe teach we ſtocks?*
Nos fruſtra aramus arenam.	*In vain we exerciſe aſſes.*
Tu temere rogas.	*You raſhly pour out words.*

§ V. The Fifth Phraſe.

Qu. *Which is the* Fifth Phraſe?

776. *Anſ.* The *Fifth Phraſe* is to expreſs the reſpect one thing hath to another as that one thing *is*, *doth* or *ſuffereth before another*, or *after* it; *within* it, or *without* it; *beyond* it, or *behither* it; *againſt* it, or *for* it; *above* it, or *below it*, &c.

Qu. *Which then are the two words uſed in this Fifth Phraſe?*

777. *Anſ.* As in the *former Phraſe* the Adverb was joyned to the Verb or to ſome other word, ſo in *this* a Præpoſition is in like manner joyned to ſome Verb or other word going afore it; *as*, Tu i præ, Ego ibo pone.

But becauſe the Præpoſition always points at ſomething mentioned juſt after it, therefore

I. There muſt be a Præpoſition joyned to ſome word aforegoing,

II. The Subſtantive name of the thing, that it points at, muſt be added to it.

Qu. *Give ſome* Exemples *to make it plain?*

778. *Anſ.* ——

I. Exemples of the Fifth Phraſe.

Ver venit ante æſtatem.	Ego cogito parare hortos trans fluvium.
Æſtas venit poſt ver.	Arundo cecidit citra limitem.
Agricola jacet intra caſam.	Hoſtis pugnat contra hoſtem.
Bos quieſcit extra parietes.	Amicus locat amicum ſupra ſe.

Qu. *Wh*

Qu. *What is the* **Rule** *of the Fifth Phraſe?*
779. *Anſ.* ——

II. The Rule of the Fifth Phraſe.

To expreſs the regards of one thing to another
1. Put down a Præpoſition,
2. And to it put the Subſtantive Name of the thing it points at, in the right Caſe.

Qu. Which is the Right Caſe after the Præpoſitions?
780. *Anſ.* The firſt 27 Præpoſitions require the word they point at, to be put in the Accuſative Caſe, *viz.* all from *Ad* to *Ultra*.

II. The next 12 require the Subſtantive after them to be put in the Ablative Caſe, *viz.* all from *Ab* to *tenus*.

III. The laſt four *in*, *ſub*, *ſubter*, and *ſuper* have ſometimes an Accuſative, and ſometimes an Ablative.

Qu. *Give me ſome* **Exerciſes** *for Imitation?*
781. *Anſ.* ——

III. Imitations of the Fifth Phraſe with more Exemples.

I. *The 27 Præpoſitions ſerving to the Accuſative Caſe.*

1. Ad At.

Pater expectat te ad Januam. — *The Keeper watches at the Door.*
Exempla ſunt ad manum. — *I ſtaied long at the* forum.
Ad tempus tu aderis, *Cic.* — *The Prieſt prayeth at the altar.*

Ad To.

Aurora vocat netricem ad colum. — *Mice haſten to the Buttery.*
Ego ibam ad te. — *Boys ſtep to the privy.*
Tu veni ad ignem. — *The Brewer walks to the cellar.*

2. Adverſus *or* Adverſum Towards.

Tu cole pietatem adverſus Deum. — *Mothers will ſhew piety towards children*
Tu præſta officia adverſum parentes. — *Shew thou fear towards God.*
Nota movet currum adverſus collem. — *Exerciſe charity towards men.*

Adverſus

Adverſus Againſt.

Arma parantur adverſus Rempublicã.	*Prepare weapons againſt an enemy.*
Pecunia datur adverſus exercitum.	*Give thou mony againſt thieves.*
Gladius acuitur adverſus lupum.	*Whet thou a knife againſt a Bear.*

3. Apud At, With one i.e. *at his houſe.*

Olera venduntur apud forum.	*Tables are made at the wrights.*
Fila fiunt apud netricem.	*Sage is ſold at the market.*
Candela fiet apud candelarium.	*James ſupt with John.*

4. Ante Before.

Tenebræ non migrant ante lucem.	*Fleſh is roaſted before the fire.*
Tu noli bibere vinum ante cibum.	*The drum ſounds before the battle.*
Signum dabitur ante pugnam.	*A fault is ſeen before amendment.*

5, & 6. Cis *or* Citra Behither, Short of, on this ſide.

Pariſii ſunt citra Germaniam.	*Scotland lies ſhort of Ireland.*
Londinum ſtat cis amnem.	*France appears behither Italy.*
Creta jacet cis Cyprum.	*Rome ſtands behither Jeruſalem.*

7. Circum About, Round.

Agnæ ludunt circum oves.	*Souldies will fight about the General.*
Maria fremunt circum littora.	*Ducks will wander about the pools.*
Sepes ponitur circum agros.	*A dike will be dug about the wall,*

8. Circa About, Nigh.

Venator habet canes circa ſe.	*The King ruind the houſes about the Tower.*
Tu veni huc circa meridiem.	*Charles took the towns about Rome.*
Preſbyter plantavit cupreſſos circa templum.	*Villages there are about London.*

9. Contra Againſt.

Noli offendere contra leges.	*Faults are made againſt art.*
Vitia ſunt contra naturam.	*Ignorance fights againſt knowledge.*
Dolor ſurgit contra voluptatem.	*Unskilfulneſs talketh againſt skill.*

Contra,

Contra Over againſt.

Regio ſeritur contra Inſulam.	*The Cart ſtands*	*over*	*the ſtable.*
Britannia aperit ſe contra Galliam.	*The battle was fought*	*againſt*	*Crete.*
Hibernia cernitur contra Hiſpaniam.	*Crete appears*		*Greece.*

10. Erga To, Towards.

Amor laudatur erga parentes.	*Carry thy ſelf well towards Magiſtrates.*
Odium vituperatur erga inimicos.	*Have thou a zeal towards Religion.*
Diaconus præſtat officium erga Presbyterum.	*Exerciſe not anger towards Companions.*

11. Extra Without, on the outſide of.

Balneum ſtruitur extra ædes.	*Tents ought to be placed*	*without*	*the town.*
Nos locamus haras extra caſas.	*A mill ought to be built*		*the kitchen.*
Muſæum debet eſſe extra cubiculum	*Shepherds feed flocks*		*the City.*

12. Intra Within.

Vulnus fervet intra viſcera.	*The heart boils within the breaſt.*
Urina liquet intra veſicam.	*The guts grumble within the belly.*
Pulmones moventur intra coſtas.	*Meat ſmells within the paunch.*
Sanguis ſalit intra venas.	*Stones are found within the bladder.*
Muſculus viget intra cutem.	*Gravel is born within the kidnies.*
Medulla creſcit intra lignum.	*Phlegm choaketh within the pipes.*

13. Infra Beneath, Below.

Femora fulciunt truncum infra nates.	*The heel is placed beneath the ancle.*
Suræ ornant crus infra popliteſ.	*The breaſt bone lies beneath the throat.*
Planta portat tibiam infra genu.	*The back bone grows beneath the Crag.*

14. Inter Between.

Dorſum patet inter humeros.	*Knuckles ariſe between the joints.*
Squamæ parent inter pinnas.	*The forehead is viewed between the horns.*
Tergum monſtratur inter latera.	*The itch appears between the fingers.*

Inter Among.

Fabulæ dicuntur inter diſcipulos.	*An hiſtory is framed among Poets.*
Poma ſparguntur inter pueros.	*Scatter ye the apples among the girls.*
Milites dividunt ſpolia inter ſe.	*We will divide the mony among us.*

15. Juxta Beſide, nigh to, by.

Olim ſepeliebant juxta viam.	*The Brewer ſits by the barrels.*
Virgo ſtabat juxta parentem.	*The Chandler fuddles by the candles.*
Scribæ cubant juxta abacum.	*The Millers ſwim by the mill.*

16. Ob For, becauſe of, upon the account of.

Verbera debentur ob ignorantiam.	*Beat the Boys for villanies.*
Merces ſolvitur ob opus.	*Promiſe thou mony for labour.*
Præmium dabitur ob eleemoſynam.	*Pay rewards for cares.*

17. Penes With, within ones keeping or power.

Pericula ſunt penes milites.	*Wool is with the Shepherd.*
Honor eſt penes Regem.	*Flax is with the Spinſters.*
Pretium erit penes mercatores.	*Let the judgment be with the Judges.*

18. Per By, by means of.

Sartor fallit ſenem per ſervum.	*A family is ſcattered by diſcord.*
Tu per imperitiam male numeras.	*By skill an exerciſe is well made.*
Non licet jurare per Deos.	*Meaſure is leſſened by deceit.*
Per me licet ut ſuſpendas te.	*By the Maſter its allowed that you play.*

Per Through, along.

Cives queruntur per oppidum.	*Men carry burdens along the ſtreets.*
Fures ſolent intrare per feneſtram.	*Forreigners walk along the fields.*
Canes venantur per valles.	*The Boys dance along the Court-yard.*

19. Pone Behind, after.

Vitulus ibat pone vaccam.	*A thief will lurk behind the ſtairs.*
Malleus jacebat pone lectum.	*The bar lies behind the Poſts.*
Hoſtes latebant pone caſtellum.	*The plough is drawn after the Oxen.*

20. Poſt

20. Poſt After, behind.

Cur tu intras ſcholam poſt horam? *Why come you after the time?*
Quis vomuit poſt pulpitum? *Wherefore ſit ye behind the Shrubs?*
Quis cœnat ſtatim poſt prandium? *Why drink ye ſtrait after meat?*

21. Præter Beſide, except, ſave.

Nemo ſtudet præter me. (dem. *The Cook hath meat beſide broth.*
Herus dat alimentum præter mercedem. *Fiſhers have hooks beſide lines.*
Mercator vendit pannum præter gemmas. *Millers have bran beſide flower.*

22. Propter Nigh to, hard by, by.

Aquæ fluunt propter marginem. *Ships ſwim by the Bank.*
Bos procumbit propter rivum. *Whales ſleep nigh to the ſhore.*
Caput dolet propter aurem. *The Feet ake hard by the heel.*

Propter For, becauſe of, by reaſon of.

Tu ſerva leges propter metum. *Do thou obey for love.*
Virtus debet coli propter ſe. *Regard thou virtue for credit.*
Merces venduntur propter lucrum. *Avoid thou the Sea becauſe of loſs.*

23. Secundum After, next to, ſecond to.

Ego accepi plagam ſecundum aurem. *Works are praiſed next after faith.*
Tu cole parentes ſecundum Deum. *Honey is choſen next after Butter.*
Tu juva ſocium ſecundum te. *Ale is ſought next after wine.*
Tu ſolare advenam ſecundum civem. *Strength is coveted next after health.*

Secundum After, according to.

Exercitia fiunt ſecundum regulam. *Fame is ſcattered according to labour.*
Præcepta formantur ſecundum Exempla. *Honour is given according to judgment.*
Exempla ponuntur ſecundum Authores. *Praiſes are ſung according to works.*
Parietes ſtruuntur ſecundum Normam. *Credit is found according to wiſdom.*

24. Secus By, nigh, cloſe by, *no good word.*

Mendicus ſtat ſecus viam. *A tree is planted by the river.*
Coryli naſcuntur ſecus fluvios. *A beggar begs by the ways.*

23. Supra Above, over.

Uxores ſedent ſupra maritos.	*The eyelids are ſet above the apple.*
Aula tollit ſe ſupra cellam.	*The arm is placed above the fiſt.*
Muſæum ſtruitur ſupra cameram.	*The roof is ſtretched above the rooms.*

26. Trans Beyond, over.

Naves vehunt linum trans mare.	*Swallows flie over the Ocean.*
Paſtor paſcit armenta trans colles.	*Flocks are fed beyond the vallyes.*
Ego emi pomarium trans paludem.	*Apples are ſold beyond the bridge.*

27. Ultra Beyond, over.

Tu ſtatuiſti ſepem ultra limitem.	*The bound is fixt beyond the ditch.*
Dedecus durabit ultra vitam.	*You have beat the boy beyond reaſon.*
Pulex ſaltavit ultra lunam.	*Why do you aſk a thing beyond memory?*

II. *The* 12 *Præpoſitions that have an Ablative after them.*

1. Ab *before a Vowel, and* A *before a Conſonant* Abs *before both,* from.

Tu defende amicum ab hoſte.	*Whither run you from the Town.*
Arundines veniunt ab Ægypto.	*The wall will defend us from cold.*
Ego novi te a capite ad calcem.	*You know me from top to toe.*

A, Ab Of, by.

Febres curantur a medico.	*Rings are made by the Goldſmith.*
Circuli torquentur a viatore.	*Necklaces are worn by Virgins.*
Panes coquuntur a piſtore.	*Diſcipline is exerciſed by Maſters.*

Ab, A, After, behind.

Inimicus ſtat a tergo.	*After play Scholars ought to ſtudy.*
A jentaculo nos meditamur.	*After prayers we eat a dinner.*
Ab alea vos ſumitis chartas.	*After ſupper go thou to bed.*

2. Abſq;

2. Abſque Without, not for.

Abſque te ſi fuiſſet nos nunquam cœnaremus.
Abſque præceptore ſi eſſet nos hodie luderemus.
If it had not been for the Phyſicion we had dyed.
If it were not for the uſher we now might idle.

3. Cum With, together with.

Tu indue induſium cum ſubucula. *We put off the cap with the hat.*
Tu exue pallium cum tunica. *We put on a neckcloth with a perruke.*
Eques induit calcaria cum ocreis. *Bring thou forth the gown with the ſhoos.*
Serva elixat columbum cum anate. *Boyl thou the crag with the tongue.*
Coquus coquit phaſianum cum grue. *Do not roaſt the trunk with the head.*
Noli frigere ranas cum ovis. *No body fryes a hawk with a turtle.*
Quis aſſat milvum cum gallina. *I have oft dreſs'd a partridge with a lark.*

4. Coram, Before i. e. before ones face, in preſence of.

Teſtis citat reum coram judice. *Scholars are puniſhed before the Maſter.*
Reus accuſat teſtem coram magiſtratu. *Thieves ſteal before the Judges.*
Teſtes excuſant Reginam coram Rege. *Murderers kill before Magiſtrates.*

5. Clam Without ones knowledge, unknown to one.

Ego duxi uxorem clam patre. *Why banquet you without your Fathers knowledge?*
Filia fugit clam matre.
Viator furatur clam comite. *Thou drunkeſt wine unknown to the Dr.*
A Fellow traveller eats unknown to thee.

6. De Of, out of, from.

Angelus mittitur de cœlo. *Drink is brought forth out of the Cellar.*
Sacerdos precabatur de charta. *Victuals are taken out of the Buttery.*
Cur tu voras opſonia de olla? *Wine is ſupped up out of the Pot.*

De About, concerning, of.

Tu veniſti ad me heri de filia. *Phyſicions talk concerning diſeaſes.*
Ego jam loquar de matrimonio. *Husbandmen dream of ploughs.*
Nolo facere verba de familia. *Women prate about houſhouldſtuff.*

7. Ex *before a Vowel, and* E *and* ex *before a Conſonant* Of, out of.

Vitrum fit ex ſilice. *I heard a ſtory of the Maſter.*
Sapo fit e cinere. *Man is made out of the ground.*
Candela fit e cera vel ſebo. *Cloaks are made of Cloth.*
Cineres fiunt a carbonibus. *Threads are made of flax.*
Caſei fiunt e lacte. *Sails are made of hemp.*
Puer fit ex infante. *An old woman is made of a girl.*
Vir fit ex adoleſcente. *A bird is made of an egg.*

8. Palam Before, in ſight of.

Vos non debetis meiere palam populo. *Pray not in ſight of the rabble.*

9. Præ Before.

Paſtor agit armentum præ ſe. *Hunters put the dogs before them.*
Ego feram amorem præ me. *We will pretend unskilfulneſs.*
Quare tu fers ignorantiam præ te? *Why pretend ye hatred?*

Præ Before, in compariſon of one.

Tu temere temnis me præ te. *Deſpiſe riches in reſpect of vertue.*
Nos videmur valere præ vobis. *Seek wiſdom before riches.*
An tu neminem præ te putas. *Scorn pleaſures in compariſon of art.*

Præ For, through, becauſe of, out of.

Ego ſaltabam præ gaudio. *Prieſts were mad out of zeal.*
Tu fremebas præ ira. *Souldiers fly for fear.*
Eliza furebat præ diſiderio. *Adulterers pine for luſt.*

10. Pro, For, inſtead of.

Dominus molet pro miniſtro. *The Deacon preaches for the Bishop.*
Ego dedi aſſem pro libris. *You count a farthing for a penny.*
Servus gerit ſe pro cive. *The maid takes her ſelf for the miſtris.*

Pro

Pro According to, in proportion to, suitable to.

Imperator fecit nihil pro ſpe.	*The houſe is not regarded according to the furniture.*
Nos accepimus gratiam pro gratia.	*Give thou rewards according to duties.*
Tu conſidera res pro ingenio.	*Men uſe to favour according to affection.*

II. Sine Without.

Schola non viget ſine diſciplina.	*Corn is is not cleanſed without a fan.*
Regula non intelligitur ſine exemplo.	*Fiſh are no' taken without a bait.*
Exempla non juvant ſine exercitiis.	*Beaſts are not killed without a knife.*

12. Tenus Up to, even to, as far as.

Tu merge te inguinibus tenus.	*Waſh thou the horſe up to the breaſt.*
Vos odiſtis ſcelera verbo tenus.	*Cover the body up to the neck.*
Anates tingunt ſe cauda tenus.	*You daubed the heel up to the ancle.*

III. *Theſe Four Præpoſitions* In, Sub, Subter *and* Super *have an Accuſative Caſe when they denote motion into or towards a thing, otherwiſe they have an Ablative.*

1. In Towards, for, into.

Tu emiſti olera in cœnam.	*Gather ſtrawberryes into a diſh.*
Res nuper venit in mentem.	*Caſt not mony into the air.*
Tu divide ſyllabas in literas.	*We divide words into ſyllables.*
Cervi pellentur in caſſes.	*Herrings were driven into nets.*

In In.

Hordeum ſervatur in horreo.	*Carps are caught in the lake.*
In tenebris tu cape candelam.	*Salmons wander in the Sea.*
Fructus portantur in corbe.	*Vapors flie in the air.*

2. Sub Under, down under.

Mappa cecidit ſub menſam.	*A tit will flie in under the tiles.*
Mantilia torquentur ſub cellam.	*Nets are thruſt under water.*
Paſſer volavit ſub tectum.	*He caſts the ring down under the chair.*

Sub Under.

Mantile jacet ſub cathedra.	*The awls lie under the leather.*
Cella ſtabat ſub lebete.	*The leather is put under the laſt.*
Lima paret ſub incude.	*The pencil lurks under the picture.*

3. Subter Under, in under.

Truttæ ludunt ſubter aquis.	*Perches will wander under the water.*
Vermis vivit ſubter terra.	*Ground-worms will creep in under ſtones.*
Cuniculi currunt ſubter ripas.	*Foxes will run in under hills.*

4. Super Above, over.

Columbi ſedent ſuper arbore.	*Do not thou ſit above a magiſtrate.*
Super cœnam libri legebantur.	*Place the wife above the husband.*
Non debes locare te ſuper patrem.	*Read not over the wine.*

Super About, concerning, *with an Ablative.*

Pannifex loquitur ſuper panno.	*Bakers talk about bread.*
Regina rogat ſuper Priamo.	*Laics ask Miniſters about Angels.*

Qu. *Is there any thing yet further to be noted about this Fifth Phraſe?*

782. *Anſ.* Note 1. that the Accuſative of the Gerund in *Dum* may be uſed after, *ad*, *ante*, *inter*, *ob*, *propter*.

Ego veni ad emendum merces.	*Souldiers are maintained for to fight.*
Equi tollunt animos ante domandum.	*Begin thou the work before break-faſting.*
Textor non texuit inter cœnandum.	*Bawl not thou in dining.*
Tu accipis præmium ob abſolvendum.	*I took mony for accuſing.*
Ego venio propter te defendendum.	*You came for to puniſh me.*

383. Note

783. Note 2. that the Ablative of the Gerund in *Dum* may be uſed after *a, ab, abs, de, e, ex, cum, in, pro.*

Pueri terrentur a diſcendo.	*Dogs will not be frighted from barking.*
Scribæ cogitant de ſcribendo.	*Fiſhers uſe to dream of fiſhing.*
Gloria oritur ex bene agendo.	*Praiſes ariſe from labouring.*

784. Note 3. that the natural place of the Præpoſition is next before its caſe, but

1. Sometimes the Prepoſition is ſet before the Verb, and compounded with it, as

Sacerdotes adeunt templum.	*Scholars will go to ſchool.*
Rex anteit Proceres.	*Maſters go before uſhers.*
Imperator tranſduxit milites fluvium.	*Skiffs carry cattel over the lake.*
Morbus pervadit corpora.	*The Plague hath gone through the City.*
Cives nuper exiverunt civitate.	*The King went to day out of the Palace.*
Nautæ detrudunt naves ſcopulo.	*I thruſt you the boat off from the mud.*
Enſis abſcindit caput cervicibus.	*An ax will cut boughs from trees.*
Nos fere in æſtate abſumus domo.	*Nobles in autumn are away from town.*
Nox ſuadet inire ſomnum.	*Go thou into the bed.*

2. *Cum* is ſet after *me, te, ſe, nobis, vobis, qui.*

Quicum vos cupitis ludere.	*With whom ſhall we eat?*
Ego cupio ludere tecum.	*Thou ſhalt dine with me.*
Viſne tu ludere mecum.	*I will ſup with thee.*
Nos volumus otiari vobiſcum.	*Antony will ſtudy with himſelf.*
Vos manebitis nobiſcum.	*You ſhall break-faſt with us.*
Petrus cupit te otiari ſecum.	*We will banquet with you.*

§ VI. The Sixth Phraſe.

Qu. *When is the ſixth Phraſe uſed?*

785. *Anſ.* The Sixth Phraſe is uſed to declare that what is, does, or is done, *is, does* or *is done* To or For ſomething, *that is* to its uſe, gain or loſs.

Qu. *Which then are the two words that make this Phraſe?*

786. *Anſ.* The firſt is a Verb as ſet down by the ſecond Phraſe, when it denotes that any thing *is* or *does* or *is done* To or For the uſe of another thing.

The ſecond is a Subſtantive of the Dative Caſe, which in the Latin Tongue is appointed to denote the thing, To or For which a thing *is, does,* or *is done.*

N. B. *The Engliſh in this Phraſe before the Subſtantive uſe the Præpoſitions* To *or* For *according to the Fifth Phraſe, but the Latins in the ſame ſenſe uſe a Dative Caſe.*

Qu. *Give me ſome* Exemples *of the Sixth Phraſe?*

787. *Anſ.* ——

I. Exemples of the Sixth Phraſe.

Poma ſunt nobis. Ego miſi pavonem Regi. Pavo mittitur Reginæ.
Decus fuit olim virtuti. Tu dediſti nuces ſimiæ. Nuces dantur ſimiis.
Præmium non erit deſidiæ. Ille ſervat baccas ſibi. Baccæ ſervantur vobis.

Qu. *which is the* Rule *of this Sixth Phraſe?*

788. *Anſ.* ——

II. The Rule of the Sixth Phraſe.

When you are to expreſs that ſomewhat *is, does,* or *is done* To or For the uſe of any thing, firſt put down the Verb according to the ſecond Rule, and ſecondly adde to it the Name of that thing in the Dative Caſe.

Qu. *Give ſome* Imitations *of the Sixth Phraſe?*

789. *Anſ.* ——

III. Imitations of the Sixth Phraſe with more Exemples.

Tu reſponde mihi.	*I will anſwer to the boy.*
Viſne tu ſcribere nobis exercitia?	*We are at leiſure for labours.*
Nos dabimus tibi aſſem.	*You ſhall not open a leaf for us.*
Ego non poſſum ſcribere vobis.	*You ſhall not write a ſyllable for a Scholar*
Liber ponit vobis exempla.	*O boys we will not give to him a farthing*
Tu monſtra diſcipulis locum.	*Let him keep his writing to himſelf.*
Vos debuiſtis attendiſſe Præceptori.	*He ſhall not ſhew a letter to us.*
Ego aperiam vobis paginam.	*We will attend to the rule.*
Si vos vacatis ſtudiis.	*I will read the words to you.*
Tu voca mihi huc Adamum.	*I have called James hither to you.*
Tu adde virtutem ſcientiæ.	*We will adde skill to virtue.*

Vos

Vos ſemper cedite parentibus.	*The rabble yeilded to the Nobles.*
Pugna fert militibus periculum.	*Whoredome brings diſgrace to young men.*
Victoria parit imperatori gloriam.	*Diſcipline brings credit to a School.*
De me ego poſſum ſpondere tibi.	*Cencerning thee I have engaged to the Mr.*
Pater ſpondet filiam viro.	*The old woman engaged the virgin to me.*
Tu ſoles narrare matri fabulas.	*Tell thou to us the ſtory about Adam.*
Ego minuam tibi caput.	*Crimes leſſen honour to men.*

Merces emuntur mercatoribus.	*Aſſes were a buying for millers.*
Equi venduntur equitibus.	*Boots were a ſelling for footmen.*
Frœna promuntur equis.	*Saddles were brought out for mules.*
Urbes produntur hoſtibus.	*Citizens were betrayed to Citizens.*
Stips ſolvitur militi.	*Monyes were a paying to the Corporation.*
Præmium debetur doctori.	*Pay was owing to the Army.*
Triumphus peritur Imperatori.	*Praiſe was ſeeking for the School.*
Pecunia numeratur aurifici.	*Monyes were paying to the goldſmiths.*
Exercitium augetur diſcipulis.	*Dangers were increaſing to travellours.*

790. N. B. 1. To *is oft left out in Engliſh, but is to be underſtood as,*

Give thou me the cup.	for *to me.*	*You anſwer us nothing.*
I ſent the King a Camel,	for *to the King.*	*Change me the garments.*
we have catch'd you a bird	for *for you.*	*I wrote you a letter.*

791. N. B. *Theſe following have a Dative Caſe, though the Engliſh of them ſeems to be Tranſitive and to require an Accuſative by the Third Rule, becauſe* To *cannot well be ſupplied.*

Pater credit filio.	*A wife believes the Husband.* (*Eve.*
Tu ſuades nobis pacem.	*The Devil adviſeth Eve to ſin,* i.e. *ſin to*
Reges favent ſubditis.	*Mothers favour the Daughters.*
Chirurgi invident medicis.	*Owls envy eagles.*
Cives ſtudent divitiis.	*Scholars ſtudy Arts.*
Voluptas nocet juvenibus.	*Shadows hurt the Corn.*
Medici medentur morbis.	*Herbs will heal wounds.*
Imperator imperat exercitui.	*Money will command the General.*
Populus debet parere legibus.	*Subjects will obey the King.*
Petrus voluit Jeſum parcere ſibi.	*Judges will not ſpare thieves.*

credō. ſuadeō
favēō. invideō
ſtudēō. nocēō
medeōr. imperō
pareō. parcō
ſimiliḡō. ſ. vi

These have a Dative Caſe

§ VII. The Seventh Phrase.

Qu. *What is the Seventh Phrase used to express?*

792. *Ans.* The Seventh Phrase is to express that one thing is *the thing of another thing* as, *this is the book of the Master.*

Qu. *Which are the two words that make up this Phrase?*

793. *Ans.* The I. word is a Substantive of any case as it is set down by any of the former Rules.

The II. put to it is also a Substantive of the Genitive Case, that betokens *of what* or *who's* the other thing is?

N. B. *In English we either put the Præposition* **Of** *before the latter Substantive by the Fifth Rule, as* the book of the Master, *or else put* es *or* 's *after it, and set it before the other. as,* the Master's book, the peace of the Church, the Churches peace.

But in Latin the Genitive Case is designed to signify the same.

Qu. *Give me some* **Exemples** *of the Seventh Phrase?*

794. *Ans.* ——

I. Exemples of the Seventh Phrase.

By 1. *Rule,* O puer Magistri. Heus filia Regis. O serve Dei.
By 2. *Rule,* Uxor heri adest. Pater Gilberti venit. Jecur avis editur.
By 3. *Rule,* Ego legi librum Episcopi. Christus firmavit fidem Petri.
By 5. *Rule,* Diaboli vagantur extra limites cœli. Pueri ludunt ante ostium Scholæ. Homines tentantur ab hoste animarm. Nemo vivit sine gratia Christi.
By 6. *Rule,* Tu da gloriam Domino mundi. Tu semper pare Regi regum.

Qu. *Now give me the* **Rule** *to direct me to make the like.*

795. *Ans.* ——

II. The Rule of the Seventh Phrase.

To shew a thing to be the thing of another thing.

I. Put down the first Substantive according to the former Rules.

And II. add to it the second Substantive shewing who's it is in the Genitive Case. Quando substantiva diversa significatio nusic concurrunt

Qu. *Give me some* **Imitations** *of the Seventh Phrase?*

796. *Ans.* —— ut posterius a priore possideri quodammodo videatur, tum posterius in Genitivo ponitur.

III. Imitati-

III. Imitations of the Seventh Phaſe with more Exemples.

1. *R.* O Imperatores exercituum vos ſolvite ſtipem militibus.
O Judices civitatis vos ferte auxilium civibus.
O Cives Londini vos ſervate concordiam inter vos.

O Tongues of Angels praiſe ye the Lord of Heaven.
O Sons of the Church avoid ye the tumults of diſcord.
O Princes of the earth obey ye the King of Princes.

2. *R.* Opera charitatis firmant ſpem.
Preces fidei valent apud Deum.
Metus culpæ nutrit gratiam.

The number of faults encreaſeth correction.
The cry of Murder flieth to Heaven.
The Chances of War teach us to fear.

3. *R.* Abacus habet copiam pennarum.
Cur tu ſpargis atramentum calami.
Lineale maculavit chartam libri.
Scalpellum ſcidit folium papyri.

The Cook { *Salteth the fleſh of hogs.* / *Pickleth the ſtalks of lettuce.* / *Boyls the inwards of bullocks.* / *Broils the liver of an hen.* }

5. *R.*

Fur	accuſatur	Furti.	
Latro	de crimine	Latrocinii.	
Homicida		Homicidii.	

The Judge hath abſolved { *the Adulterer* / *the Whore* / *the Witch* } *of the crime of* { *Adultery.* / *Whoredome.* / *Witchcraft.* }

Lanius	parat	carnem in tempus prandii.
Mercator		pannum in diem mercatus.
Agricola		falcem in menſem meſſis.

Men muſt perform their duties { *before the end of life.* / *againſt the hour of death.* / *for the fear of Judgement.* }

Cryſtall

Cryſtalli lucent	Intra	ſpatia antrorum.	*Beards*	*grew*	*the chins of men.*
Gemmæ latent		capita oſtrearum.	*wool*	*out*	*the skins of ſheep.*
Phaſiani paſcuntur		cortes aucupum.	*Briſtles*	*of*	*the backs of ſwine.*

Calcar hæret in latere equi. *A buckler is made of the matter of an Headpiece.*

Collare geritur in collo equitis. *Coaches run through the ſtreets of the Village.*
Enſis cingitur ad femur peditis. *The pole is fixt to the axel of the waggon.*
Butyrum portatur in pera paſtoris. *A flea lurks in a plight of cloth.*
Galerus locatur in vertice caliendri. *The flakes lie at the foot of the anvil.*
Clamor oritur ex fuga exercitus. *The bridle is tyed at the end of the ſaddle*
Tunica fiet ex materia pallii. *The peſtle lies by the ſide of the mortar.*
Feneſtra eſt contra oſtium cameræ. *Blood flows in the veins of the body.*
Urina manat per collem veſicæ. *Milk trickles through the teats of the dug.*

Fructus vitis vincit baccas hederæ. *Loſs vexeth the hearts of Merchants.*
Veſtiæ agri carpunt frondes corni. *Branches of trees cover the vines.*
Potus pellit ſitim palati. *Wine looſeth the cares of the heart.*
Pes menſurat diſtantias rerum. *Water ſprinkleth infants faces.*
Æſtas parit theſauros autumni. *Treaſures comfort old mens age.*
Ligo fodit aream horti. *Shovels clenſe furrows of the field.*
Piſtor pinſit grana tritici. *A pound weighs the weight of wares.*
Pecten pectit capillos pueri. *Feathers adorn peacocks tails.*
Tonſor tondet barbam viri. *Soap will clenſe the joints of the limbs.*
Quis comit caudam aſini ? *Victory obtains the honour of a triumph.*
Pictor pingit imaginem cameli. *Sin bringeth the diſgrace of diſpraiſe.*
Sutor ſuit calcem calcei. *A ſpinſter ſpins a thread of flax.*

797. N. B. *So the Genitive Caſe of the Gerund in* Dum *is oft put after theſe following Subſtantives and ſuch like.*

Amor habendi divitias perdit homines. *You cheriſh a love of ſuddling.*
Odium diſcendi cepit pueros. *Avoid thou a hate of labouring.*
Non erit hodie tempus ludendi. *I will give thee time to dine.*
Faſtidium audiendi poſſidet laicos. *Men nouriſh a ſcorn to obey.*
Mors non dat nobis ſpem manendi. *Grace gives hope of finding life.*
Fuitne tibi cauſa mœrendi ? *We have not cauſe to complain.*
Ego video eſſe vobis ſtudium piſcandi. *Children ſhew deſires of idling.*
Tu cernis eſſe mihi voluntatem jejunandi. *Hope ſtrengthens the will to endeavour.*
Nunquam fuit tibi otium ſcribendi. *Make to thy ſelf leiſure to pray.*
Poſt cœnam tempus erit ambulandi. *Morning bringeth the time to ſtudy.*
Diabolus olim fuit auctor peccandi. *Adam was the author of ſtraying.*

Nos

Nos bene novimus modum vestiendi nos.	*Ye forget the manner of saluting.*
Inimici non dant locum spirandi.	*Time affords not place to loiter.*
Ego opinor esse vobis libidinem mentiendi.	*Yield not to a humour of fighting.*
Scripturæ Dei sunt norma vivendi.	*Reason shews the rule of judging.*

§ VIII. The Eighth Phrase.

Qu. *Which is the Eighth Phrase?*

798. *Ans.* Sometimes the Substantive in the former Rules doth not sufficiently express and declare the thing meant by it, so that then there is need of adding another Substantive; which may more fully express and explain it. And this is the Eighth Phrase.

Qu. *Which then are the two words of the Eighth Phrase?*

799. *Ans.* The first word is a Substantive set down in the former Rules The II. is another Substantive denoting the same thing, added to it.

Qu. *Give me some* **Exemples** *to make this plain.*

800. *Ans.* ——

I. Exemples of the Eighth Phrase.

By 1. *Rule*, O Rex Carole, *he that calls the King calls Charles.*

By 2. *Rule*, Rex Carolus regnat, *If the King reigns, Charles reigns.*

By 3. *Rule*, Ego amo Regem Carolum, *If I love the King, I love Charles.*

By 5. *Rule*, Ego loquor de Rege Carolo, *If I speak of the King, I speak of Charles.*

By 6. *Rule*, Tu pare Regi Carolo, *If you obey the King you obey Charles.*

By 7. *Rule*, Ego vidi coronam Regis Caroli, *the Crown of the King is the crown of Charles.*

And therefore the latter Substantive is still put in the same case that the former is in.

Qu. *Give me now the* **Rule** *of the Eighth Phrase?*

801. *Ans.* ——

II. The Rule of the Eighth Phrase.

To express what thing any thing is.

I. Set down the I. Substantive, as the former Rules direct.

II. Adde to it another Substantive denoting the same thing in the same Case. Excipiuntur quæ in eodem casu per appositionem connectuntur:

Qu. *Give*

Qu. *Give me ſome* Imitations.
802. *Anſ.* ——

III. Imitations of the Eighth Phraſe.

1. O Domine Deus tu bea nos. *O Son Benjamin fear thou God.*
O Jeſu Chriſte tu ſerva Eccleſiam. *O Daughter Betty read the Scripture.*
O pueri diſcipuli vos precamini. *O Siſter Mary learn thou virtue.*

O Eva uxor Adami cur tu ediſti pomum?
O Adame Pater hominum quare tu perdidiſti mundum?
O Mulieres filiæ Evæ cur vos ſequimini matrem?

O Elizabeth Queen of England why didſt thou leave the earth?
O Biſhops miniſters of God why do you neglect diſcipline?
O Prieſts ſons of Peace why do you cheriſh quarrels?
O Maſters teachers of Boys why do you ſuffer villanyes?

2. Ego Præceptor ſcripſi librum. *I the butcher kil'd the bullock.*
Tu juvenis negligis præcepta. *Thou the baker madeſt the bread.*
Chriſtophorus Faber didicit nihil. *John the cook roaſted the ribs.*
Nos magiſtri valde laboramus. *we Fathers have dreſt you a dinner.*
Vos diſcipuli formidatis laborem. *Ye aſſes deſpiſe the food.*
Verbera præmia ſceleris ſcindent vos. *The beaſts the hogs ſhall eat it.*

3. Paulus intravit inſu'am Cyprum. *I never ſaw the City Rome.*
Ego heri legebam Paulum Apoſtolum. *We inhabit the Iſle Brittain.*
Deus miſit Jeſum Chriſtum in mūdum. *God made the ſun the eye of heaven.*
Imperator cruci fixit Petrum Epiſcopum. *He formed the moon the Queen of the ſtars.*
Tu imitare Apoſtolos miniſtros Chriſti. *Prize the ſcripture the word of God.*
Vos tuemini Jeſum authorem fidei. *Seek the glory the reward of virtue.*

5. Tu cogita de lege norma vitæ. *Toieves think of mony the prize of villany*
Nos rapimur ad mortem mercedem peccati. *Go to the Gallows the place of puniſhment.*
Tu pugna contra ſcelera cauſas doloris. *Fight ye againſt vice the author of ſin.*
Gratia ducit in cœlum locum gloriæ *Study for wiſdom the glory of the Soul.*
Fur pendet in cruce inſtrumento pœnæ. *Act not againſt the Church the family of God.*
Tu cave a Diabolo hoſte animarum. *Beware ye of guns the inſtruments of death*

6. Tu

6. Tu cane laudes Deo Regi. *Chriſt heals vices the Souls diſeaſes.*
Tu funde preces Domino Deo. *Spare thou the Soul the temple of God.*
Tu pare ſcripturæ legi Dei. *Give honour to Biſhops the Servants of Chriſt*

7. Heus filia Domini Præceptoris. *I have read the books of King Charles.*
Tu audi ſermonem Henrici Epiſcopi. *I have ſeen the face of Duke James.*
Tu lege hiſtoriam Matthæi Apoſtoli. *Thou painteſt the head of Prince Henry.*

Qu. *Is this all to be known about the Eighth Phraſe?*

803. *Anſ. N. B.* Becauſe theſe two Subſtantives denote the ſame thing therefore one may be ſaid *to become* the other or *to be, to be thought*, and *to be called* the other and hereupon ſuch Verbs often come between the two Subſtantives.

1. Verbs of *Becoming*, Fieri, Naſci, &c.

Puer naſcitur homo. *A dwarf is born a monſter.*
Puella fiet mulier. *Boys will become men.*
Virgo fiet anus. *Men will become old-men.*

Nos videmus vitulos fieri tauros. *Ye ſee that lambs become ſheep.*
Quis vidit apes fieri veſpas? *I perceive that Deacons become Prieſts.*
Nos ſcimus gallos fieri capones. *We have ſeen ſervants to become maſters.*

2. Verbs of *Being*, Eſſe.

Eccleſia eſt corpus Chriſti. *A School is the Kingdom of the Maſter.*
Meretrices ſunt eſca Diaboli. *Old-ones were once Children.*
Labor erit decus juvenum. *Hell will be the end of vices.*
Senes ſunt bis pueri. *Pleaſures are the gins of Satan.*
Anima debet eſſe templum Dei. *Laws ought to be the rules of living.*
Timor domini eſt principium ſapientiæ. *Ignorance will be the cauſe of unskilfulneſs.*

Nos novimus biblia eſſe libros Dei. *that a plum is a pome?*
Vos videtis duces vobis eſſe opus. *Who doubts* { *that a willow is a tree?* / *that an eel is a fiſh?* / *that a buſhel is a meaſure?*
Paulus ſcribit amorem pecuniæ eſſe radicem peccatorum.

3. Others, as *Manere, videri, haberi, eſtimari, vocari, dici, &c.*

Aſinus manebit aſinus. *Owls will continue Owls.*
Anguillæ videntur angues. *A bat ſeems a mouſe.*

Cavea habetur carcer. *Alms are counted works of Religion.*
Malus dicitur arbor navis. *Prayers are called the wings of the mind.*
Manna vocatur cibus Angelorum. *A miniſter is called Paſtor of the flock.*

§ IX. The Ninth Phraſe.

Qu. *which is the Ninth Phraſe?*

804. *Anſ.* When we are to expreſs that the *thing* mentioned by any of the aforegoing Subſtantives is *ſuch* or *ſuch* then we put to it an Adjective: And this is the Ninth Phraſe, as a man is *good* or *bad*, *wiſe* or *fooliſh*, *ſmall* or *great*, *well* or *ſick*, &c.

Qu. *which then are the two words of this Ninth Phraſe?*

805. *Anſ.* The I. word is any Subſtantive of what caſe ſoever ſet down by any of the foregoing Rules.

The II. word is an adjective put to it.

Qu. *Give me ſome* Exemples *of this?*

806. *Anſ.* —

I. Exemples of the Ninth Phraſe.

1. O Domine bone! O Domini boni! O Puer pulcher!
O Domina bona! O Dominæ bonæ! O Puella puchra!
O Pomum bonum! O Poma bona! O Cœlum pulchrum.

2. Dominus bonus amatur. Domini boni coluntur.
Domina bona laudatur. Dominæ bonæ quæruntur.
Pomum bonum voratur. Poma bona eduntur.

3. Nos optavimus dominum bonum. Ego liqui dominos bons.
Nos exſpectavimus dominam bonam. Tu fugiſti dominas bonas,
Nos quæſivimus pomum bonum. Ille invenit poma bona.

5. Quis vult { mori pro domino bono? vivere cum domina bona? prandere ſine pomo bono? } Servi aluntur a dominis bonis. Servæ foventur a dominis bonis. Corpora nutriuntur a pomis bonis.

6. Ego cupio placere domino bono. Quis nolit cedere dominis bonis.
Tu ſoles nocere dominæ bonæ. Tu præſta officium dominis bonis.
Natura dat ſaporem pomo bono. Dentes non parcunt pomis bonis.

7. Ego

7. Ego ſum ſervus domini boni. Nos ſumus decus dominorum bonorum
Tu es ſerva dominæ bonæ. Vos eſtis dedecus dominarum bonarum
Gratus eſt odor pomi boni. Gratus eſt guſtus pomorum bonorum.

8. Tu temere accuſas Dominum virum bonum.
Ego nolo lædere famam dominæ mulieris bonæ.
Elizabetha Domina bona diu tenuit ſceptrum.

N. B. *Where all along you ſee the Adjective is put into the ſame Gender, and the ſame Caſe, and the ſame Number, that the Subſtantive is of.*

Qu. *Give me the* **Rule** *of the Ninth Phraſe?*

807 *Anſ.* ——

II. The Rule of the Ninth Phraſe.

To ſhew a thing to be *ſuch* or *ſuch*, to the *Subſtantive* Name of that Thing put the *Adjective* in the ſame *Caſe*, and in the ſame *Gender*, and in the ſame *Number*. *Adjectivum cum ſubſtantivo genere, numero et caſu conſentit.*

Qu. *what* **Exerciſes** *are there for* **Imitation** *of this?*

808. *Anſ* ——

III. Exerciſes for Imitation of the Ninth Phraſe with more Exemples.

1 *R.* O docti doctores vos docete nos. *O learned man teach thou me.*
O Sapientes viri vos monete populum. *O wiſe Teacher admoniſh the rabble.*
O Cœci duces cur vos ducitis plebem. *O blind guide thou ruineſt ſouls.*

2. *R.* Strenuus miles fugat hoſtes. *Able Souldiers conquer the Enemy.*
Peritus Imperator vitat pericula. *Skilful Magiſtrates ſave the City.*
Fortes animæ non metuunt necem. *A ſtout King heartens the Subjects.*

3. *R.* Aura ſpirat ſpiritum lenem. *Breath maketh gentle gales.*
Turbo habet ventum vehementem. *Anger raiſeth vehement affections.*
Eccleſiæ probant prudentes doctores. *Want affrights a prudent mind.*

5. *R.* Gratia trahit nos ad novam vitam. *Devils draw men to new crimes.*
Via virtutis ducit ad cœlum altum. *Thunders rowl above high mountains.*
Vitia trudunt in orcum profundum. *Dragons creep into deep dens.*
Tu noli ambulare cum viro fatuo. *Do not ye prate with ſenſeleſs women.*(ter.
Patres timent de filiis ſtultis. *A Mother hath not joy of a fooliſh Daugh-*
Res male agitur coram injuſto judice. *Appear not before unjuſt Judges.*

6. R. Auceps ponit eſcam avibus parvis. *Who lays baits for a ſmall Red-breaſt?*
Venator ſtatuit laqueũ vulpibus jejunis. *Give food to the hungry Family.*
Quis dabit mercedem ſervo infido? *Truſt not to an unfaithful Maid.*

7. R. Nicolaus eſt puer hebetis ingenii. *Ireland is a land of dull wits.*
Rana eſt beſtia raucæ vocis. *A drum is an inſtrument of a hoarſe ſound.*
Tu quære gloriam immortalis famæ. *Seek ye the fame of immortal honours.*

8. R. Deus eſt æternus Pater. *Jeſus is the Eternal Son.*
Mundus eſt habitaculum temporarium. *Riches are temporary helps.*
Tu noli imitari limacẽ animal pigrum. *A louſe is a ſlow inſect.*

Exemples in which ſome *Verb* comes between the *Subſtantive* and the *Adjective.*

Omne corpus eſt mortale. *All Bodies are mortal.*
Quædam animæ ſunt immortales. *The Soul of a man is immortal.*
Terra poſt pluviam eſt uda. *Fields after ſnow are ſlabby.*
Cœlum in æſtate ſolet eſſe ſudum. *The Spring is ſeldom fair.*
Aer erit ſerenus. *The day-break will be clear.*
Si dies non ſit nubilus. *If the nights be not cloudy.*
Pluvia aliquando cadit ſpiſſa. *Drops often fall very thick.*
Fel eſt amarum. *Some herbs taſte bitter.*
Pomum immaturum eſt acerbum. *Ripe grapes are not harſh.*
Aqua maris eſt ſalſa. *Let not your food be very ſalt.*
Ova ſunt inſulſa. *An oiſter ought not to be freſh.*
Animalia naſcuntur nuda. *Wilde nations fight naked.*
Ægroti homines non fiunt pingues. *A ſick Beaſt ſeldom grows fat.*
Quot ſunt res? Ecce tot ſunt res. *How many Perſons in the Kingdom?*
Unus eſt Deus. *Lo! So many, there is one Queen.*
Partes bibliorum ſunt duæ. *There are two Dukes.*
Tres ſunt teſtes in cœlo. *There are three Earls.*
Quatuor ſunt partes anni. *There are four Judges.*
Quinque ſunt ſenſus animalium. *There are five Knights.*
Scamna in ſchola ſunt ſex. *There are ſix Nobles.*
Septem fuere candelæ in templo. *There are ſeven wandring Stars.*
Octo ſunt oſtia in noſtris ædibus. *There are eight ſtreets in the Town.*
Novem erant gradus in iſta ſcala. *There are nine joynts on three fingers.*
Decem ſunt dentes in illo pectine. (dam. *There are ten toes on two feet.*
Undecim fuerunt Apoſtoli præter Ju- *There are eleven Scholars in our ſeat.*
Duodecim erant Tribus filiorum Jacobi. *There are twelve inches in a foot.*
Viginti verbera ſunt bis decem. *Twenty four hours in a day.*
Triginta ſunt dies in uno menſe. *There are thirty pens in that deſk.*
Centum ſunt armenta in monte. *There are* 100 *years in an age.*

Mille

Mille ſunt genera morborum. *There are 1000 chances in life.*
Pauci homines ſunt probi. *Few faſhions are good.*
Multæ feminæ ſunt pravæ. *Naughty boys are many.*
Mentha eſt planta ſuavis. *The ſmell of ſweet herbs is ſweet.*
Odor foricæ eſt valde teter. *Onions are unſavory.*
Quædam lineæ ſunt rectæ. *The Cedar ariſeth ſtreight into the air.*
Aliæ lineæ ſunt curvæ. *The branches of a bramble are crooked.*

Quotus es Tu? *Of what number am I?*
Ego ſum Primus. *Thou art firſt.*
Quoti ſunt cæteri Diſcipuli? *What are the other Girls?*
Johannes eſt ſecundus. *Joan ought to be ſecond.*
Martha erat tertia. *Betty was third.*
Franciſca fuit quarta. *Grace was fourth.*
Helena eſt quinta. *I judge that Rachel is fifth.*
Tu es ſextus. *Lucy is the ſixth.*

Quotum caput lecturus es tu? *What verſe are we to read?*
Ego lecturus ſum caput ſeptimum. *Thou art to read the ſeventh line.*
Cras ego legam caput octavum. *I will read the eighth line.*
Mendum maculavit verſum nonum. *The ninth verſe cannot be read.*
Tu lege principium verſûs decimi. *In the tenth verſe there is an hard word.*
Puer medius dat locum ultimo. *The laſt word is in the middle page.*

The Pronoun Adjectives.

Quis homo adeſt? Quæ fama vagatur? *What Church ſtandeth there?*
Ille muſculus eſt ſolidus. *That Church is Pauls Church.*
Iſta vulnera ſunt manifeſta. *Theſe foundations are ſtrong.*
Nimii ii ſudores erunt noxii. *That wall is very thick.*
Hæc carmina videntur elegantia. *Thoſe windows are very broad.*
Ipſe Præceptor fecit alios verſus. *The King himſelf laid the firſt ſtone.*
Idem vir ſcripſit duas orationes. *The Queen did the ſame thing.*
Quidam puer dixit ſe feciſſe. *Certain Biſhops gave much mony.*
Eſtne ullus qui vult probare id? *Will there be any men who will blame them? No! None will.*
Nulli ſunt homines qui volunt. *Yes ſome will whatever work it be.*
En! aliquis civis venit quicunq; ſit. *Whether ſpeech of theſe two ſlight you?*
Utram pennam eligis ex his duabus? *The one ſpeech I admire.*
Altera penna erat olim mea. *I deſpiſe neither of the two.*
Ego opinor neutram pennam eſſe tuam.

Cujum eſt pecus hoc? *Whoſe houſholdſtuff is that?*
Hi mille agni ſunt mei. *That ſpit is mine.*
Iſti arietes erunt tui. *Thoſe mortars are thine.*

Paſtor habet quoque gregem ſuum.	*John calls this pot his own.*
Illæ ſtinæ videntur noſtræ.	*Thoſe baskets are ours.*
Armenta veſtra olim languerunt.	*Thoſe chairs are yours.*
Reliqui greges habent ſuum dominum.	*Thoſe glaſſes have their Miſtreſs.*
Cujas erat Abrahamus?	*Of what Tribe thinkeſt thou John to be?*
Abrahamus fuit quidem veſtras.	*I know him to be of ours.*
Sed Paulus eſt noſtras.	*You wiſh that he had been of yours.*

More Exemples and Imitations.

Aqua turbida inquinat fontem limpidum.	*Dirt makes clear water foul.*
Agri ſteriles ſunt ſicci.	*The dugs of a barren cow are dry.*
Campi fertiles ſolent eſſe humidi.	*Moiſt meadows are fruitful.*
Obſcuræ nubes fugant lucem claram.	*Clear light drives dark miſts.*
Aurum eſt metallum purum.	*Shillings are made of pure ſilver.*
Plumbum eſt impurum.	*Impure metals are cheap.*
Salix numeratur inter arbores lentas.	*Flax giveth limber threads.*
Calami ſicci ſunt fragiles.	*The ſhank is a brittle bone.*
Pyrus arida ſolet eſſe rigida.	*Dry oars uſe to be ſtiff.*
Quis non videt roſam eſſe humilem.	*Box ſeems to be a low ſhrub.*
Fructus præcõces habẽt ſaporẽ gratũ.	*Rath-ripe apples are not firm.*
Nos carpſimus modium fructuum ſerotinorum.	*Late ripe pears are ſolid.*
Tu ſemper elige poma matura.	*The taſt of ripe apples is ſweet.*
Uvæ immaturæ ſunt acerbæ.	*Unripe mulberries are harſh.*
Recentia ceraſa bene ſapiunt.	*Freſh-gathered figs will taſt ill.*
Putria ova male olent.	*Rotten fleſh breaths an unſavoury ſmell.*
Victæ juglandes non ſunt plenæ.	*Shriveld apples are ſeldom ſharp.*
Inania dolia ſunt ſonora.	*An empty bogs-head hath an hoarſe ſound.*
Vivum animal eſt cicur vel ferum.	*Live animals are tame or wild.*
Leones mortui non mordent.	*A dead dog barketh not.*
Omne pecus eſt brutum.	*All beaſts are brutiſh.*
Homines et Angeli ſunt rationales.	*Man is a rational creature.*
Corpora macra non ſunt obeſa.	*Lean men have not purſie bellies.*
Infantes naſcuntur ſinguli aut gemini.	*Women bring forth Infants ſingle or twins*
Sancti mores ornant faciem formoſam.	*Fair faces promiſe good manners.*
Nudæ nates ſimiarum ſunt deformes.	*Leproſie maketh the face ugly.*
Novacula reddit hirſutas genas glabras.	*A beard maketh a ſmooth skin briſtly.*
Criſpi capilli fere ſunt decõri.	*Curled beards are held uncomely.*
Rufus capillus putatur indecõrus.	*We count not red hairs to be comely.*
Capita ſenum habent canos capillos.	*Gray hairs are the glory of old men.*
Caput ſine ullis capillis eſt calvum.	*Bald heads require a peruke.*
In rebus proſperis vultus erit hilaris.	*In a proſperous matter men are chearful.*

In

In rebus triſtibus vultus eſt mœſtus.	*In a ſad matter faces are ſad.*
Venter ſatur facit vultum blandum.	*A blith countenance follows a full belly.*
Frons torva oſtendit animũ crudelem.	*Cruel minds ſhew ſcrow faces.*
Miles ſaucius eſt homo vultûs tetrici.	*Members wounded make the face ſowr.*
Ventres fiunt graciles ex ſtomacho ſegni.	*Dull ſtomacks make ſlender bodies.*

Qu. *Is there any thing more to be obſerved in the* Ninth Phraſe?

809. *Anſ.* There are Eight things to be noted yet in the *Ninth Phraſe.*

I. Many times there comes a Verb between the Suſtantive and the Adjective as,

Homines divites videntur felices.	*Guiltleſs men oft ſeem guilty.*
Juſti homines in judicio erunt ſalvi.	*Honeſt men will ever be happy.*
Pauperes homines habentur ſervi.	*The wicked man is a bond-man.*

810. II. Whereas in Engliſh we by this Rule uſe the Verb **Am** and an Adjective, the Latins oft expreſs both by one Verb, as

I am		Ego	
Able,		Poſſum.	
Fired,		Ardeo.	
Cold,		Frigeo,	
Warm,		Tepeo,	
Hot,		Caleo,	
Clear,		Liqueo,	
Froze,		Rigeo,	
Boyling hot,		Ferveo,	
Quiet,		Quieſco,	

I am		Ego	
well, luſty,		Valeo.	
Sick, ill,		Ægroto,	
Silent,		Sileo,	
Awake,		Vigilo,	
Hungry,		Eſurio,	
Thirſty,		Sitio,	
Ignorant,		Ignoro,	
Glad,		Gaudeo,	
Sad,		Mœreo.	

811. III. Whereas to denote that a thing is *a doing* imperfectly we in Engliſh uſe **am** and the Participle in **ing** the Latins uſe only a Verb of the Imperfect Tenſes, as

I am eating, Ego edo.	*I am writing a letter to my brother.*
Thou wert playing, Tu ludebas.	*You were lately viewing the Kings ſhips.*
We will be going, Nos ibimus.	*By and by you will be begging again.*

So Paſſively.

My cloaths are a making.	Ego aderam cum cœna coquebatur.
Your ſhoes were a mending.	Tu mane quamdiu pecudes mulgentur.
I ſtaid while the letter was a writing.	Agri mei nunc ſeruntur.

812. IV. Note, That in the Perfect Tenſes of ſome Verbs, inſtead of *have*, *had* and *ſhall have*, we oft uſe am, was, ſhall be, as

My Father is gone,	Pater meus abivit.	*The horſe is run away.*
The bird was flown,	Avis avolaverat,	*The dog was got out.*
The Maſter will be come,	Magiſter venerit.	*The Scholars were riſen.*

813. V. But if when we ſay any thing is a doing the meaning be it is about to do it then the Latins uſe the Verb *Eſſe* with the Participle in *rus*, as

I am ſending my Son to Italy. Ego ſum miſſurus filium in Italiam.
I was juſt coming to you. (*field.* Jamjam ego eram venturus ad te.
I am going (i.e. *about*) *to plow my* *I am about to go into the Country.*

814. VI. So in expreſſing the Paſſive that ſignifies Imperfectly, we in Engliſh uſe am, and a Participle in d, t, or n, for which the Latins uſe but one word Paſſive, as

I am loved,	Ego amor.	*We are kicked.*	*Burdens are born.*
Thou art taught,	Tu doceris.	*Ye are thumpt.*	*Glory was ſought.*
The book is read,	Liber legitur.	*Ropes are twiſted.*	*Friends will be known.*

815. VII. But if the meaning be that it is perfectly done, ſometimes we uſe am with the *Participle*, and ſometimes *have been done*, and the Latins always uſe *eſſe* with a Participle perfect, as

The Maſter is ſtept forth,	Præceptor eſt egreſſus.	*The work hath*
The play is long ſince ended,	Ludus jamdiu finitus eſt.	*long been done.*
The world is much changed.	*I have been oft beaten.*	

816. VIII. To expreſs that ſomething *is to be done* ought or muſt be done they uſe the Participle in *dus* with *Eſſe* or *Videri*, &c.

Hic puer eſt amandus.	Condyli ſunt fricandi.	*Labours are to be expected,*
Digiti tui ſunt lavandi.	Pollex non eſt lingendus.	*Knees ſhould be bowed.*
Ille lebes erat purgandus.	Sudor eſt tergendus.	*Razors are to be whetted.*

§ X. The

§ X. The Tenth Phraſe.

Qu. *which is the* Tenth Phraſe?

817. *Anſ.* As Adverbs and Prepoſitions are joyned to Verbs by the Fourth and Fifth Phraſes, ſo may they be to Adjectives, as, *A man very good.*

Qu. *which are the two words in this* Tenth Phraſe?

818. *Anſ.* The I. is an Adjective, the II. an Adverb or Præpoſition joyned to it.

I. Exemples of the Tenth Phraſe.

Salix eſt arbor haud procera.
Omne atramentum eſt valde nigrum.
Anna fuit ſerva non fida.
Nemo vivit liber a curis.
Impii homines erunt miſeri in morte.
Ne tu ſis laſcivus in verbis.

Qu. *Give me the* Rule *of the Tenth Phraſe?*

819. *Anſ.* ——

II. The Rule of the Tenth Phraſe.

As Adverbs and Præpoſitions are joyned to Verbs ſo are they to Adjectives.

Qu. *Give ſome* Imitations *of the Tenth Phraſe?*

820. *Anſ.* ——

III. Imitations of the Tenth Phraſe with more Exemples.

Pueri pauci ſunt ſemper gnavi. *Few wives are always mild.*
Omnes fere ſunt ignavi. (pem. *Almoſt all Churches are large.*
Milites ſaltem ſtrenui merentur ſti- *Juſt men are at leaſt guiltleſs.*
Viator jacet feſſus de via. *Be not cruel towards any animal.*
Noli tu cubare pronus in faciem. *Man is born naked in the whole body.*
Coquus ſurrexit de cœna bene ebrius. *Dogs are fierce againſt bears.*

§ XI. The Eleventh Phrase.

Qu. *which is the* Eleventh Phrase?

821. *Anſ.* The *Eleventh Phraſe* is juſt like the *Sixth*, and is uſed when we are to expreſs that a thing is *ſuch* or *ſuch* to or for any thing. *A child is dear to the Father. Learning is uſeful to Boys.*

Qu. *Which are the two words in the Eleventh Phraſe?*

822. *Anſ.* The I. is an Adjective ſet down by the Ninth Rule, The II. is a Subſtantive of the Dative caſe joyned to it.

Qu. *Give me ſome* Exemples *of the Eleventh Phraſe?*

823. *Anſ.* ——

I. Exemples of the Eleventh Phraſe.

Puer eſt charus Patri.
Doctrina eſt utilis pueris.
Stultus vir vivit inutilis ſibi.
Hordeum eſt gratum ſuibus.
Piper eſt acre guſtui.
Labores ſunt ingrati corpori.

Qu. *which is the* Rule *of the Eleventh Phraſe?*

824. *Anſ.* ——

II. The Rule of the Eleventh Phraſe.

When you are to expreſs that any thing is *ſuch* or *ſuch* to or for a thing I. put down the Adjective according to the Ninth Rule, II. put [illegible] Subſtantive name of that thing in the Dative Caſe.

Qu. *Give me ſome* Imitations *of the Eleventh Phraſe?*

825. *Anſ.* —

III. Imitations of the Eleventh Phraſe.

Qualis eſt Deus ſervis ſuis.	*How are Devils to their Subjects.*
Deus eſt nunc talis nobis,	*Devils are ſuch to the kind of men,*
Qualis fuit ſemper populo ſuo.	*As they have ever been to men.*
Deus eſt bonus toti mundo.	*Evil Spirits are unfriendly to the Church*
Chriſtus eſt benignus animæ piæ.	*We find Devils malitious to us.*
Jeſus eſt ſimilis medico fido.	*Devils are like to roaring Lions.*
Deus non eſt diſſimilis amanti patri.	*Devils ſeem not unlike to fierce Serpents.*
Tu gradere per viam tutam tibi.	*To ſin is not a thing ſafe for any man.*
Tu noli intrare callem periculoſam viatoribus.	*The old Serpent layeth baits dangerous to Souls.*

Cardo

Cardo est diversus posti.	*Bristles are very different from (to) wool.*
Ignorantia est contraria scientiæ.	*Know ye that Art is not contrary to grace*
Desidia putatur mala discipulis.	*Dulness is judged bad for the mind.*
Febres habentur noxiæ corpori.	*Scabs are hurtful to a smooth skin.*
Sapientia est jucunda intellectui.	*Sugar is pleasant to the palate.*
Otium est molestum diligenti puero.	*Prayers are troublesom to the ungodly.*
Tu memento peccata esse invisa Deo.	*Vices are hateful to a good Soul.*
Tu esto comes omnibus sociis.	*Let Citizens be courteous to forreigners.*
Situs scholæ est commodus studiis.	*The River is commodious for London.*
Fraus est incommoda mercatori.	*An helmet is incommodius to the ears.*
Antrum fuit vicinum castello nostro.	*Judea lay nigh unto Cyprus.*
Cervix est proxima spinæ dorsi.	*The Eyelids ly next to the forehead.*
Sex mares sunt pares bis tribus fæminis.	*Thrice three Apples are equal to nine.*
Pannus debet esse æqualis mensuræ.	*A foot is equal to twelve inches.*
Lux solis est communis omni animali.	*The streets are common to all passers.*
Quies est amica naturæ lassæ.	*Dew is friendly to green grass.*
Nimius somnus est inimicus saluti.	*Smoke is unfriendly to the eyes.*
Humor est dulce negotium segeti.	*Hony is a sweet thing to a sound mouth.*
Lupus est triste negotium stabulis.	*Winds are sad things to trees.*
Dies judicii erit faustus bonis viris.	*The last day will be unhappy to the bad.*

826. N. B. *Thus also the Interjections* Hei *and* Væ *foretelling evil* to *some thing have therefore after them a Dative Case*, as, Hei mihi! Væ tibi! Væ nobis! Væ vobis! *wo to the world! Alass for the Land!* Hei Væ dativo also punitur

§ XII. The Twelfth Phrase.

Qu. *Which is the* Twelfth Phrase?

827. *Ans.* The *Twelfth Phrase* is like the *Seventh*, when an Adjective hath after it a Genitive Case, as, *A man greedy of mony.*

Qu. *Which then are the two words of the Twelfth Phrase?*

828. *Ans.* The I. word of the Twelfth Phrase is an Adjective set down by the Ninth Rule, The II. is a Substantive of the Genitive Case added to it.

Qu. *Give me some* Exemples?

829. *Ans.* ——

I. Exemples of the Twelfth Phrase.

Infantes sunt ignari omnium rerum.	Tu vive memor mortis.
Natura hominum est avida pecuniæ.	Rex est certus eundi.

Qu. *What*

Qu. *What Adjectives are they that govern a Genitive Case?*

830. *Anſ.* Not all Adjectives have a Genitive Caſe, but only thoſe that ſignify,

1. { *Able*, as Potis, compos, potens *Able*. Patiens *able to endure.*
   { or *unable*, Impos, impotens, *unable*. Impatiens *unable to bear.*

2. { *Knowing*, as Peritus, certus, doctus, memor, expertus, *experienced.*
   { or *Ignorant*, as Imperitus, incertus, indoctus, immemor, inexpertus, rudis.

3. { *Deſirous*, as Amans, cupiens, avarus, avidus *greedy*, cupidus *covetous.*
   { or *Regardleſs*, Negligens, prodigus.

Qu. *Now give me the* Rule *of the Twelfth Phraſe?*

831. *Anſ.* ——

II. The Rule of the Twelfth Phraſe.

To declare that any thing is *able* or *unable*, *knowing* or *ignorant*, *deſirous* or *regardleſs* of any thing. I. Put down the Adjective according to the Ninth Rule. II. To it put the Subſtantive in the Genitive Caſe.

Qu. *Give me ſome* Imitations *of the Twelfth Phraſe?*

832. *Anſ.* ——

III. Imitations of the Twelfth Phraſe with more Exemples.

Vir ebrius non eſt compos mentis.	*Sober men are able-Maſters of their affections.*
Solus Deus eſt potens ventorum.	*Falſe Gods are not able managers of thunder.*
Cameli ſunt patientes ſitis.	*Lions are able-endurers of hunger.*
Mulier fatua eſt impos animi.	*Wanton minds are unable rulers of deſire.*
Sævi heri ſunt impotentes iræ.	*Fooliſh mothers cannot manage their love*
Imperator debet eſſe peritus belli.	*Muſicians are ſkilful uſers of the harp.*
Pueri ſolent eſſe docti pilæ.	*Boys ought not to be skill'd at the dice.*
Mea filia eſt certa matrimonii. (rum.	*No man can be ſure of another day.*
Bellum facit milites expertos pugna-	*A fight makes men expert in war.*
Tu ſemper eſto memor brevis ævi.	*Live mindful of the laſt judgment.*
Juvenes judicantur imperiti rerum.	*Leave not the School unskilful of arts.*
Homines vivunt immemores officii.	*Be not unmindful of the laſt hour.*
Non decet pueros eſſe rudes literarum.	*It becomes not Prieſts to be ignorant of the Scriptures.*

Vir

Vir amans vini eſt prodigus pecuniæ. *Merchants lovers of mony are not laviſh of wine.*
Adoleſcentes ſunt cupidi novarum rerum. *Be not covetous of other mens things.*
Puer avidus laudis eſt amandus. *A Stomach greedy of meat is to be blam'd.*

§ XIII. *Sentences made of theſe Phraſes.*

Qu. Thus you have ſeen the Twelve Phraſes, and the Twelve Rules by which words are to be put rightly together to make ſentences, now I will give you ſeveral ſentences of one, two, three, four, five, ſix, ſeven, eight, nine, ten Phraſes, and in each you muſt tell how many Phraſes there be, and by what Rules they are put together.

833. Supellex emitur. Peculium paſcit. Ager patet. Poſtis ſtabit.
O Thoma tu garris. O Sacerdotes vos precamini. O domus tu cades.
Cavea tenet avem. Cors Accipit Gallos. Canes vertunt verua.
Malleus nocet fronti. Tudes tundit parietem. Serra ſecabit ſpinam.
Pus fluit ex vulnere. Urina manat de veſica. Nares mittunt mucum.
Molitor molit farinam in mola. Subula pungit corium ſuper modulo.
Judex juſtus non ſolet parcere viris improbis. Homo vivit ad breve tempus.
Eccleſia exercitus Chriſti Jeſu debet pugnare contra hoſtem Diabolum.
Jeſus Imperator Eccleſiæ jamdudum vicit hoſtem animarum.
Libri bene ſcripti promittunt ſapientiam nobis.
Deus fecit nobiſcum duo fœdera, Adamus rupit fœdus primum.
Diſciplina debet vigere in ſchola. Mali pueri ſunt ſæpe caſtigandi.
Heus puer tu attende animum, non eſt hic locus dandi plures ſententias.

CHAP. XVIII.

Three ſorts of Simple Sentences.

Qu. *How many ſorts of Sentences are there?*
834. *Anſ.* A Sentence is either ſingle or compounded.
Qu. *What is a Single Sentence?*
835. *Anſ.* A Simple or Single Sentence is that which hath but one Verb Finite in it, as,

Mans age is ſhort. Ætas hominis eſt brevis.
Follow thou the Guide. Tu ſequere ducem.

Mans age is not ſhort. Ætas hominis non eſt brevis.
Follow thou not the guide. Tu ne ſequere ducem.

Who betrays himſelf?	*Who betrays not himſelf?*
Quis prodit ſeipſum?	Quis non prodit ſeipſum?

N. B. 836. *Where you ſee that every ſingle Sentence is either*
1. Affirmative, *as, The age of man is ſhort, follow the guide &c.*
2. or Negative, *as, The age of man is not ſhort, follow not the guide, &c.*

N. B. 837. *where note that the Engliſh alwas put their Negative Particle* not *after the Verb Finite, But the Latins put theirs* non, haud, ne, *before the Verb Finite.*

I will not go, Ego non ibo. *Stay thou not,* Ne mane tu, &c.

Qu. *How many ſorts of Simple Sentences are there?*

838. *Anſ.* Of Simple Sentences there be three ſorts, 1. An *Interrogative* Sentence. 2. An *Aſſertive* Sentence. 3. An *Imperative* Sentence.

Qu *What is an Interrogative Sentence?*

839. *Anſ.* An Interrogative Sentence is that by which a Queſtion is asked, as

Quid eſt ſententia?	*what is wiſdom?*
Quis homo vocat me?	*Which books will teach us?*
Quando venit pater tuus?	*When will you be wiſe?*
Quamdiu ignavia poſſidebit vos?	*How long deſpiſe ye knowledge?*
Quorſum vos nectitis moras?	*To what end come ye to ſchool?*
Quantus vir erat Paulus Apoſtolus?	*How great men are good ſcholars?*
Quare nos non odimus viros malos?	*Why ſtudy ye not without end?*
Unde veniſti tu hodie?	*Whence comes this deſire of idleing?*
Quoties fit luna plena in anno?	*How oft in a day will ye be chaſtiſed?*
Cur vos non pergitis in diſcendo?	*Why bend ye not your minds to ſtudy?*
Quam multi homines pereunt?	*How few Children love learning?*
Quale inſtrument erat lyra?	*What (ſort of) tree is a Cornelian?*

Qu. *What is an Aſſertive Sentence?*

840. *Anſ.* An Aſſertive Sentence is that, wherein it is aſſerted, that ſomewhat *is*, or *is not*; *doth* or *doth not*; *ſuffereth*, or *ſuffereth not*, as,

Ancilla verrit ædes.	*The Brewer's cleanſe the Barrels.*
Ancillæ non purgant mortaria.	*The Brewers cleanſe not the Veſſels.*
Milites ſunt ſaucii.	*My head is wounded.*
Milites non ſunt ſoſpites.	*My brethren are not ſafe.*
Alea habetur luſus improbus.	*Cattel are fed in the Meadows.*
Chartæ non habentur tutæ.	*Cows are not bred in halls.*

Qu. *What is an Imperative Sentence?*

841. *Anſ.* An Imperative Sentence is that wherein is *laid upon* ſomewhat *to be*, or *not to be*; *to do*, or *not do*; *to ſuffer*, or *not to ſuffer*. as

Vos

Vos eſtote mites.	*Let a Maſter be ſevere.*
Vos ne eſte atroces.	*Let not Maſters be curſt.*
Agricolæ ſerunto agros.	*O ſhepherds feed the Flocks.*
Fures ne furantor.	*O boys imitate ye not evil manners.*
Homo reus accuſator coram judice.	*Let cruel men be puniſhed.*
Homo inſons ne condemnator.	*Let not ſober men be accuſed.*

842. N. B. I. *Interrogative and Aſſertive ſentences are made by the Indicative Mood: but Imperative Sentences are made by the Imperative Mood.*

843. II. *In Interrogative and Imperative Sentences the Engliſh ſet the Nominative Caſe after the Verb Finite, but the Latins either before or after.*

Whence come you?	Unde venis tu?	Unde tu venis?
Haſten ye hither.	Vos feſtinate huc.	Feſtinate vos huc.

844. III. *Interrogative and Aſſertive Sentences are denyed by* Non, Haud, &c. *but Imperative by* Ne, as

Tu non metis. Cur non metis? Tu ne mete.

845. IV. *Interrogative Sentences muſt have this mark written after them (?) and Aſſertive and Imperative muſt have this (.)*

Who goes? I will go. Go you. Quis venit? Ego venio. Tu veni.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Compounded double Sentences.

Qu. *What is a Compounded Sentence?*

846. *Anſ.* When two ſingle Sentences are joyned together by ſome Cople or Ty, they are called a Compound Sentence; So then in a Compound Sentence there is

I. One ſimple Sentence, as, *Life is ſhort.*

II. Another ſingle Sentence after it, *Art is long.*

III. Between theſe two a *Cople* is put to joyn them together.

as *Life is ſhort* and *Art is long.*	*Life is ſhort* but *Art is long.*
Vita eſt brevis et Ars eſt longa.	Vita eſt brevis ſed Ars eſt longa.

Qu. *What words may be the Coples to joyn two Sentences together?*

847. *Anſ.* There are three ſorts of words which are Coples.

I. A Relative word which reherſeth and fetcheth over a foregoing Subſtantive again, as *who, which, That,* Qui, quæ, quod.

II. A

II. A Comparative word whereby two things are compared together, as, Tantus, Quantus; Talis, Qualis; Tot, Quot; Tam, Quam; Toties Quoties; Plus, Quam; Magis, Quam; Minus, Quam; Ita, Ut, &c.

III. A Conjunction whoſe only uſe is to joyn two Sentences together, as, Et, Que, Quoque, &c.

848. N. B. *The natural place of the Cople is between the two Sentences cop'ed and it is ſeldom removed thence, but* quoque, autem, vero, enim, quidem *are put after the firſt word of the ſecond Sentence, and ſo are* que, ne, *and* ve, *and moreover theſe three are adjoyned to that firſt word, as you may ſee in the Exemples following.*

849. I. Exemples wherein the Relative is the Cople.

Miſer eſt homo, qui homo miratur nummos.
Happy are the men, which men deſpiſe the pleaſures of the world.
Chriſtus eſt filius Dei magni cujus Chriſti nomen nos veremur.
The Virgin Mary was given to Joſeph, which Mary was the Mother of Jeſus.
Jeſus fuit homo cui homini nemo unquam fuit ſimilis.
The firſt men were almoſt Giants, to which men none now are equal.
Fœlix eſt homo quem hominem pericula aliorum hominum terrent.
Wretched are the men, which men others dangers warn not.
Biblia ſunt liber Dei præ quo libro cæteri libri debent ſperni.
The Scripture is the word of God, in which word we read his will.
Illa templa ſuntdecora, quæ templa habent figuram rotundam.
Thoſe wheels are ſlow, which wheels have a four-ſquare ſhape.
Mulieres ſunt lætæ quarum mulierum mariti ſunt placidi.
Sad are thoſe Girls, which girls mothers are undone.
Nos putamus eos homines perditos, quibus hominibus nulla gratia datur.
We make thoſe Scholars weary, to which Scholars we grant no play.
Agricola ſerit grana tritici, quæ grana aves vorant.
The Taylor ſews the Garments, which Garments Kings put on.
Circuli circumeunt dolia, ex quibus doliis muſtum fluit.
Water waſheth the furrows, in which furrows the Crop grows.

850. N. B. I. *Oft in Engliſh we uſe* wherat, whereof, wherein, whereby, wherewith, whereto, whereabout, wherefore, inſtead of, at which, of which, in which, by which, &c. as,

You do thoſe things whereat I uſe to be offended, i. e. *at which things.*
Here is the book whereof you ſpoke, i. e. *of which Book you ſpoke.*
What are the words whereby I have offended you? i. e. *by which words.*
That is the pen wherewith I wrote the letter, i. e. *with which, &c.*

851. N. B.

851. N. B. II. *That inſtead of the Relative and its Subſtantive and the Præpoſition before them we uſe an Adverb if there be one of the ſame import,* as

Nihil eſt cauſæ cur (*for* ob quam cauſam) tu iraſcaris.
There was no reaſon why you ſhould ſo beat me, i. e. *for which reaſon.*
Cur tu cubas ubi ego debeo cubare, *i. e.* in eo loco in quo loco ego, &c.
You ſhall not ſit where I uſe to ſit, i. e. *in that place in which place I, &c.*
Ego ſæpe vidi regionem unde piper mittitur, *i. e.* ex qua regione
Feſtina tu illuc quo pater miſit te, *i. e.* ad eum locum, ad quem locum, &c.
Ego manebo donec tu abeas, *i. e.* in id tempus in quo, &c.
Pueri clamant quamdiu præceptor abeſt, *i. e.* in toto tempore in quo, &c.
Tu ſtultus jentas quando nos prandemus, *i. e.* in eo tempore, in quo, &c.

852. N. B. III. *To expreſs that ſomewhat is, does, or ſuffers* before *or* after the time, *in which ſomething is, does, or ſuffers, we uſe* before that, *or* after that, *and in Latin,* Priuſquam, antequam, poſtquam. *as*

We cannot hear your words before that you ſpeak them.
Nemo debet puniri antequam peccaverit, *or* priuſquam peccaverit.
I ſhall account my ſelf an undone man after that you are gone.
Hic annus eſt ſextus poſtquam nos incepimus diſcere.

853. II. Exemples wherein a Comparative word is the Copie.

Tantus Rex eſt Carolus Secundus, quantum Regem nemo unquam vidit.
So big men were the Giants as ſo big none of us hath ſeen.
Emi hodie talem equum, qualem equum tu nunquam vendidiſti.
I heard ſuch a Sermon to day, as you never heard in your life.
Tot ſunt hominum ſententiæ, Quot ſunt capita.
So many Miniſters ought to be as there are Churches.
Toties nos fundimus preces, quoties ſervamus jejunium.
So oft do good men ask pardon as they offend a neighbour.
Tam dulce eſt Saccharum quam amarum eſt fel.
So pious was Abel, as Cain was impious.

854. III. Exemples where Conjunctions are the Copie.

An Rex veniet, an non veniet? Viſne tu Indere mecum, an non vis?
Siniſtra manus gerit ſcu um, et dextra manus tenet gladium.
Vita noſtra fugit, horæq; volant. Porci gerunt ſetas, atq; oves habent lanam.
Hiems mittit frigora, ac undæ rigent. Pectus frige-, venter quoque eſurit.

Tu

Tu neq; diſcis, neq; ſinis tu me diſcere. Hodie nos nec edimus, nec bibimus.
Faber aut ſorat lignum, aut acſult inſtrumenta ſua.
Vel Doctor doceto diſcipulos, vel diſcipuli linquunto doctorem.
Sive Præceptor adſit, ſive hypodidaſcalus adſit vos eſte diligentes.
Vos quidem tenetis libros, ſed ego non ſentio vos legere.
Falſi Dii ſunt multi, at eſt unus verus Deus.
Magiſter ſæpe caſtigavit vos, at vos nunquam attenditis.
Præceptor legit, vos vero negligitis. Herus minatur, nos autem ludimus.
Ego verberabo te, quia tu verberaviſti comitem tuum.
Nemo dabit poma vobis, quoniam vos nihil datis de rebus veſtris.
Coquus hodie non aſſat carnes, nam veru eſt fractum.
Non decet me ſequi vos, namq, vos omnes eſtis ſtulti.
Tu ſemper colito parentes tuos, parentes enim genuerunt te.
Ego promitto me eſſe venturum ad cœnam, ſi tu vocaveris me.
Juvat pueros diſcere, modo libri non ſint difficiles.
Nos mox aderimus ad prandum; dummodo vos expectetis nos.
Tota ſchola cras ibit in campos, niſi Præceptores vetent.
Ægrota membra non valebunt, ni homo pareat medico.
Tu als te non primum eſſe filium, quotus igitur es?
Exercitus noſter fugavit hoſtes, ergo nos vicimus.
Quamquam habes nimias divitias, Ego tamen aio te eſſe pauperem.
Quamvis hæc veſtis eſt laxa, tamen eſt veſtis valde decora.
Lima limat aſperum ferrum, ut fiat lamina lævis.
Bonus vir optat, ut omnes homines ſalventur.
O, utiuam liceret nobis otiari per totum hunc diem.
Plures ſunt ignavi pueri in hac ſchola, quam aliquis putaret.

Imitations.

I aſk whether you will obey, or whether you will not obey.
Old men die, and young men poſſeſs their Riches.
The time paſt is not ours, alſo the future time is uncertain.
Neither can money buy life, nor can ſtrength drive away death.
Either perform thou thy duties, or never hope thou to be happy.
Whether we eat, or whether we drink, we ought to give glory to God.
Either labour ye with all care, or elſe leave the School.
Many men indeed are taught, but few men are learned.
Wiſdom crieth in the gates, but fooliſh men deſpiſe knowledge.
Wicked men oft ſin, becauſe they fear not the anger of God.
We are prone towards vice, ſeeing that we are born in ſins.
Sell not thou thy ſoul for pleaſure, for the price is unreaſonable.
There is no hope concerning you, if ſo be that ye deſpiſe diſcipline.
In vain men are exerciſed in learning, if the rules be not true.
No man will ſuffer the preſent time to be loſt, unleſs he be fooliſh.

Virtue

Virtue will not dwell with you, except you hate all vice.
You confess that you are not a wise man, what then are you?
The death of young men is not rare, therefore snatch the present hours.
Although *the path of life be narrow*, yet *the Godly man walks in it.*
We plant trees in our gardens, that *we may crop the fruits.*
O, that *children considered well the great rewards of doing well.*
More deceits are in the heart than, *stars are in the heaven.*

CHAP. XX.

THe ſumm of all that hath been ſaid before about putting words together to make Sentences

855. N.B. I. *If you meet with an* **Interjection** *remember it maketh a ſenſe of it ſelf, and is not to be adjoyned to any other word.*

856. II. *Remember that a Conjunction is only to joyn two Sentences together.*

857. III. *Only Nouns, Pronouns, Verbs, Participles, Adverbs, and Præpoſitions are put into a Sentence, according to the twelve foregoing Rules.*

§ *The ſum of the Twelve Phraſe-Rules is as follows.*

858. I. In every ſimple Sentence you will meet with one **Verb Finite**, and but one which agrees with its Nominative Caſe in the ſame Number and Perſon by *Rule* II.

859. II. Adverbs and Præpoſitions are joyned either to Verbs by *Rule* IV, and V. or to Adjectives by *Rule* X.

III. A *Noun*, *Pronoun* or *Participle* if it be,

860. 1. A Subſtantive of the **Vocative** Caſe is uſed only after *O*, and to call by, by *Rule* I.

861. 2. A Subſtantive of the **Nominative** Caſe is uſed only before a Verb Finite to ſhew *what thing is, does, or is done*, by *Rule* II.

862. 3. A Subſtantive of the **Accuſative** Caſe is uſed upon three accounts,
1. Before **Verbs Infinite** as the Nominative before Finite, by *Fig.* 861.
2. After **Verbs Tranſitive** to denote the thing done or acted upon by *Rule* III.
3. After the firſt 27 **Præpoſitions**, and the laſt 4. when they ſignifie motion towards ſomewhat, by *Rule* V. *Fig.* 780. *&c.*

863. 4. A Subſtantive of the **Ablative** Caſe is uſed only after the twelve Præpoſitions, and the four laſt when they denote not motion.

864. 5. A Subſtantive of the **Dative** Caſe is uſed to denote the thing to which or for which any thing is meant, and is put, 1. after Verbs by *Rule* VI. 2. after Adjectives by *Rule* XI. 3. after *Hei & Va*, *Fig.* 826.

865. 6. A Subſtantive of the **Genitive** Caſe is uſed
1. After another Subſtantive to tell whoſe or whereof the thing is by *R.* VII.
2. After Adjectives of *Ability*, *Knowldge* and *Deſire*, by *Rule* XII.

865. 7. A Subſtantive of any Caſe of the ſame import with another, is upon the ſame account put into the ſame Caſe with the other by *Rule* VIII. though a Verb come between, *Fig.* 803.

866. IV. A Noun, Pronoun or Participle Adjective ever complies with its Substantive in the same Case, Gender and Number, by *Rule* IX.

867. N. B. *Infinite Verbs and Participles are both Nouns and Verbs, and so*
1. *Infinite Verbs, Supines, and Gerunds being Substantives are used as other Subst.*
2. *Other Participles being Adjectives follow the Rules of the Adjectives.*
3. *Considered as Verbs, they follow the Rules of the Verbs.*

CHAP. XXI.

What words may be left out in a Sentence.

Qu. *IS there any thing more to be known about Sentences?*

Anſ. Two things are yet to be known about Sentences.

868. I. Whatever words may be as well underſtood, as if they were mentioned, may be left out.

Qu. *When is that that words may be as well underſtood, when left out, as if mentioned?*

869. *Anſ.* Words may be left out on four accounts.

Qu. *Which is the Firſt?*

870. *Anſ.* I. When the Thought is expreſſed by ſome other means, as, Quis eſt ille? *poynting to a man*, you need not ſay, Quis homo eſt ille homo? Your face is as black, as that, *ſhewing the chimny-back*.

Qu. *When ſecondly are any words left out?*

871. II. Thoſe words which upon the mentioning of others muſt needs be ſuppoſed to be meant, may be left out; as, Dicunt te eſſe mendacem, nothing can be ſuppoſed to ſay ſo, but *men*, therefore *homines* is left out. When you come to Pauls, turn to the left, every body knows you mean Pauls *Church*, and the left *hand*, therefore they need not be expreſſed.

See Exemples of this in every Phraſe.

872. In the I. Phraſe the Interjection may be left out and the Vocative only expreſſed, as, Cur tu mentiris Petre? Huc ades Jacobe. Parce mihi Domine.

873. In the II. Phraſe, The Nominative when upon mentioning the Verb it is certainly known, need not be expreſſed, as,

Amo, amabam, docebo, lego, audiam,	*No word*	Ego	*And therefore they may be left out.*
Amas, amabas, ama, docebis, legis, audi,	*can be the*	Tu	
Amamus, docemus, legebamus, audimus,	*Nominative*	Nos	
Amatis, amate, docebitis, legetis, audite,	*Caſe but*	Vos	
Aiunt te furere, prædicat Regem veniſſe,		Homines	
Pluit, ningit, grandinat, fulminat,		Nubes	

But you cannot ſay Amat, docet, legunt, audiebat, &c. without the Nominative, becauſe none can know *what* it is that *Loves*, *teaches*, &c. it may be Pater amat, *or* mater amat, *or* canis amat, *or* uxor amat. &c.

874. In the III. The Accuſative Caſe may be left out when it is known, as Cur non edis? *viz.* cibum. Debes lavare (te) antequam bibis, *viz.* potum.

875. In

875. In the IV. The Adverb is left out oft, as, Si vales (bene) gaudeo.
876. In the V. Phraſe, 1. Sometimes the Præpoſition is not expreſt, 2. Sometimes the Caſe is left out, and 3. ſometimes both.

§ *The Præpoſition is left out and underſtood in theſe.*

877. 1. The word that ſignifies { *the Inſtrument by* / *the Cauſe for* / *the Manner after* } which any thing is done, is uſually put in the Ablative Caſe without the Præpoſition.

Solemus ferire hoſtes gladio.	*The Smith knocks the anvil with a hammer.*
Piſtores pinſunt fruges piſtillo.	*We cut wood with an ax.* (*pipkin.*
Ancilla haurit aquam lebete.	*The maid broke the Cooks head with a*
Hoſtis pupugit viſcera mea enſe.	*Soldiers cover their heads with an head-piece.* (*rake.*
Scindimus panem cultris	*The Husbandman gathers wheat with a*
Paſtor ſpargit caules furca.	*He cuts the earth with a plow.*
Cædimus malos ſervos baculo.	*We beat idle boys with boughs.*
Brachia furum ligantur funibus.	*Standing crops are cut with ſickles.*
Flores vinciuntur tenui filo.	*A bald crown is vailed with a perruke.*
Rumpimus duras nuces malleo.	*We cleanſe wheat with a fan.*
Partes corporis veſtiuntur veſte.	*Who can cleave a plank with a pole?*
Sartor pellit acum digitali.	*The Hunter ſtrangles the hare with his thumbs.*
Idem cruciat pediculos forfice.	*The Seamen drag the ſhip with a cable.*
Diſcipuli rei tacent metu.	*My heart leaps for joy.*
Pia anima ardet amore Dei.	*My tongue cleaves to my roof for thirſt.*
Gaudemus rebus tuis proſperis.	*Rejoyce not at the death of another man.*
Ego ſum valde laſſus ſcribendo.	*Horſes are weary with carrying heavy weights.* (*men.*
Video te eſſe feſſum nihil agendo.	*The Doctor is tyred with looking to ſick*
Ordo ſervatur facili labore.	*All men are equal by nature.*
Ædes ſtruuntur exigua cura.	*You ſtole my mony by manifeſt fraud.* (*on.*
Oratio elegans fingitur ſecreta arte.	*You cloath your ſelf after a publick faſhi-*

878. 2. *The word of price for which any thing is bought or ſold, is put in the Ablative Caſe without a Præpoſition.*

Emi duos equos duabus libris.	*We can buy a ſheeps lungs for three pence.*
Jentamus hodie tribus aſſibus.	*The woman will ſell 20 walnuts for ſix farthings.*
Vendidi domum vili pretio.	*Buy not gold at too dear a price.*
Libri ſunt emendi æquis pretiis.	*Jewels are ſold an unreaſonable rate.*
Arma venduntur iniquo pretio.	*You may buy marbles at a reaſonable price.*

879. 3. *After words ſignifying* to be full *or* to be empty of any thing, *the Ablative Caſe is ſet down without a Præpoſition*, as,

Hoc poculum eſt plenum vino.	*The pipes are full of wind.*
Caput tuum eſt inane ſapientia.	*The barrel is empty of ale.*

So Egēre *and* carere *have an Ablative without a Præpoſition*, as,

Sum dives quamquam caream nummis. *You cannot read, if you want a book.*
Non poſſumus carere cibis. *The Smith cannot be without the anvil.*
Homo pauper eget rebus omnibus. *Your rooms want furniture*

880. 4, Fungor, fruor, utor, potior, dignus, indignus *have an Ablative Caſe without a Præpoſition*, as,

Bonus vir fungitur offi io ſuo. *The Miniſter diſcharges the Duties of Religion.*
Fidus ſervus fruitur mercede ſua. *Husbandmen enjoy the fruits of the field.*
Nos diſcipuli utimur libris noſtris *The Taylor uſeth his ſheers.*
Fures potiuntur præda magna. *Wiſdome obtains a grand glory.*
Strenuus opifex eſt dignus præmio. *Vices are worthy of diſgrace.*
Ignavus puer eſt indignus laude. *Bad works are unworthy of fame.*

881. 5. In *is left out in theſe Examples and ſuch like.*

Stellæ non lucent die. *Ye ſleep in the days.*
Plagæ non videntur nocte. *Ye wake in the nights.*
Uxor mea ægrotat animo. *I am well in body.*
Pater aderit menſe proximo. *I have not ſeen you theſe three months.*
Didicimus multas res hoc anno. *Diligent Boys ſtudy in the morning.*
Nives non cadunt menſe Julio. *Hail fell in Auguſt.*

882. 6. *So before Proper names of Towns* In *is left out*, as.

Reges Galliæ vivunt Pariſiis. *The Queen expects the Prince at Paris.*
Omnes artes docebantur Athenis. *Mark Cicero ſtudyed in Athens.*
Theſauri condebantur Carthagine. *Scipio beat his Enemies at Carthage.*
So Proceres venantur rure. *Our ſervants labour in the Country.*

883. *But if the name of the Town be of the firſt or ſecond Declenſion and of the Singular Number, it muſt be put in the Genitive Caſe, and* in urbe *left out*, as,

Quid faciam Romæ for in urbe Romæ. *What wilt thou do at Amſterdam?*
Diu vixi Edinburgi. *How long lived you in London?*
Rex non ſolet habitare Dublinii. *The Duke lives at Dublin.*

884. 7. Per *or* ad *is left out in theſe.* *Through or For in theſe.*

Poteris requieſcere mecum hāc noctem. *I will ſtay with you ſeven days.*
Carolus regnavit triginta annos. *Elizabeth reigned forty and four years*
Pannus iſte tenditur tres ulnas. *That River is ſix cubits broad.*
Mons hic patēt ſex miliaria. *The field lies open twelve miles.*

885. 8. Ad *is left out.* 1. *before* Rus & Domus, *and Proper Names of Towns*, as, Hodie Iturus ſum Londinum. *The Prince was going to Edinburgh.*
Poſtquam veni Romam, quievi. *Go thou to Amſterdam and ſee that City.*
Ito domum & vocato huc aviam. *When thou comeſt home tarry there.*
Cras ibimus rus ibique otiabimur. *Go to the Country and idle there.*

886. 2. *After Verbs of motion the firſt Supine is put and* Ad *left out.*

Eo amatum, *we go to hear ſermons.* *I came to read.*
Veni piſcatum. *Come not to Church to view.* *You went to play.*

Vado

Vado venatum.	*Came you hither to ſleep?*	*I am going to accuſe*
Abi laboratum	*Go away to walk.*	*the witneſſes.*

887. 9. *Before* Rus, Domus *and the Proper names of Towns,* a, ab, *or* ex *is not ſet down,* as,

Unde venis? venio rure.	*When came the horſes from the Country?*
Nuper pater exivit domo.	*When went your brother from home?*
Jamdudum venimus Roma.	*Why do you not go out of London?*

888. 10. *When we are to expreſs that a thing is, does or ſuffers while, when or after that any thing is, does, or ſuffers, we may firſt caſt away the Copies* while, when, *and after. And then turn the Nominative after them into the Ablative Caſe. And thirdly turn the Verb into a Participle Adjective to agree with it, leaving out the Præpoſition and this is called the* Ablative Caſe Abſolute, as,

Cum Rex veniret, hoſtes fugerunt.	Rege veniente hoſtes fugerunt.
Dum præceptor docet, pueri ludunt.	Præceptore docente pueri ludunt.
Dum nos cœnaremus, tibiæ ſonabant.	Nobis cœnantibus tibiæ ſonabant.
Poſtquam ſol eſſet ortus, ivi venatum.	Sole orto ivi venatum.
Cum candela eſſet extincta, omnes dormivimus.	Candela extincta omnes, &c.
Poſtquam ædes fuiſſent purgatæ, fervæ ludebant.	Ædibus purgatis, &c.
Cauſa judicata latrones ſuſpenduntur.	Torre accenſo quærimus libros.

Imitations.

The men labour, while the Mr. heartens them. The Maſter heartening the &c.
As the Barber clips, the hairs fall. When a gale blows the boughs move.
The Fiſh being caught, the net is laid up. The cat being preſent the mice lurk.
While Auguſtus reigned, Chriſt was born. The Maſter rageing the boys tremble.
When ſtripes ſound, hearts are in pain. while the Moon ſhines, Bats do flie.
After London was built, the bridge was made. London being built the bridge, &c.
The barn being fired the ſty was in danger. The meat being dreſſed the fire was put out
The mony once payed, the man is acquitted. The doors being ſhut you cannot enter.
The husband fled, when the wife was ſeen. Theſe words heard, he was ſilent.

889. 11. *After Verbs of* warning, accuſing, condemning, *and* acquitting, *the Præpoſition* De *is oft left out, as,*

Ego condemnabo te eodem crimine. *You are accuſed of many crimes.*

890. § *Sometimes the Caſe is left out, as,*

Pater nuper abivit, *viz.* domo.	*You drive out the dog,* viz. *out of doors.*
I præ ſequar, *viz.* præ me.	*I will go before,* viz. *you.*
Cur excludis me? *viz.* ædibus.	*Come you behind or after* viz. *me.*

891. § *Sometimes both the Præpoſition and its Caſe are left out, namely, when ever they are well enough underſtood.*

892. *So* 1. *After Verbs of* warning, accuſing, condemning *and* acquitting, De crimine *may be left out, becauſe none are accuſed of ought but of a crime, as,*

Accuſo te furti, *i. e.* de crimine furti. *You are accuſed of Adultery.*

Condem

Condemnamus vos homicidii. *we are acquitted of robbery.*
Saga abſoluta eſt veneficii. *The Judges condemn him of fornication.*

893. Sect. II. *Words* Partitive *which denote* part *out of* many *have a* Genitive *after them,* ex numero being underſtood as, *instead of* Tu es unus ex numero diſcipulorum, Tu es unus diſcipulorum.

Magiſter cecidit ſeptem puerorum. *I ſaw three of the Magiſtrates.*
David fuit primus poetarum. *None of the Girls can read.*
Pauci virorum ſunt boni. *Ten of the Apoſtles were ſlain.*
Utrum horum mavis accipe. *Chooſe ye which of the pens ye will.*
Neutra caprarum bene valet. *we deſire neither of thoſe desks.*
Alter fratrum cecidit in bello. *I love one of your two ſiſters.*

894. In the VI. Phraſe, *The Dative when well known may be left out,* as

Da panem *viz.* mihi.
Velim ut mittas equum quem promiſiſti.
Pater precor parce, *viz.* mihi.

895. In the VII. *The firſt Subſtantive is oft left out,* viz. *when upon the hearing of the Second it is well enough underſtood,* as,
Ubi ad Pauli veneris, *i.e.* ad templum. *When ye come to St. Peters.*

896. In the VIII. *one of the Subſtantives is left out,* as,

Hodie vidi Regem, *i.e.* Carolum. Nuper veniſti in urbem, *i. e.* Londinum.

897. In the IX. *Sometimes the Adjective is left out, Sometimes the Subſtantive.*

§ *The Adjective omitted when eaſily underſtood.*

Oſtende te virum, *viz.* fortem.

§ *The Subſtantive is left out.*

898. 1. Homo *is left out in theſe and the like Exemples.*

Mali oderunt bonos. *The wicked hate the righteous.*
Amicus juvat amicum. *The poor envies the rich.*
Reus accuſatur apud Judicem. *The fooliſh are more then the wiſe.*
Beati ſunt mites. *Bleſſed are the poor in ſpirit.*
Quis vivit ſine crimine ? *To day I heard one preaching.*
Pauci ſunt probi, multi ſunt improbi. *Few are the Godly, many are the ungodly.*
Dominus novit viam piorum. *Bleſſed are the pure in heart.*
Infans fit juvenis.

899. 2. Menſis *is left out in the twelve names of the months.*

Rex natus eſt viceſimo nono die Maii. *He came in January.*
Hic eſt ſeptimus dies Septembris. *Come hither on the firſt of July.*

900. 3. Manus *is oft underſtood, as* Hand *is in Engliſh, as*

Da mihi dextram tuam. *Turn you to the right.*
Cur prehendis me ſiniſtra. *I will go to the left.*

901. 4.

901. 4. Negotium, Officium, *and* Thing *and* Act *are often left out, when understood.*

Lupus eſt triſte ſtabulis.	*To write a ſhort letter is eaſy.*
Venti ſunt triſte arboribus.	*To make an elegant Speech is hard.*
Mane ſurgere eſt bonum.	*It's rare to ſee a wiſe woman.*
Mentiri non eſt meum.	*It is dangerous to ſlide on the ice.*
Omnia ſunt miſera in bello.	*Many things bring diſeaſes to men.*

Qu. *When thirdly may any word be left out?*

902. *Anſ.* III. When words have been mentioned juſt before and may be ſuppoſed to be kept in mind, then they are oft left out.

Cæſar venit & vidit & vicit.	*I will praiſe thee and ſhew thy works* viz. *and I will*
Nec habeo nummos nec careo.	*Thou art full of grace and love.*
Nos non poſſidemus plus quam vos.	*Thou art as rich as I,* viz. *as I am.*
Cujus eſt Liber? R. meus.	*Whence came you? from home.*
Hæc veſtis eſt Patris.	*Why ſtand ye here? becauſe we will.*

So in the Relative Sentence the Antecedent word is ſeldom repeated.

Deus eſt qui nos ſervat.	*I bought the Shooes which ly there.*
Amo Chriſtum qui me emit.	*The wine is bad which you ſent me.*
Habes uxorem quam non amas.	*We teach boys which learn nothing.*
Vides templum quod Rex ſtruxit.	*I heard the ſermon which you preached;*
Quem ſermonem audiviſti non eſt meus.	*what words I ſpoke thoſe I deny.*

Qu. *When fourthly may words be left out of a ſentence?*

903. *Anſ.* IV. When any word is to be mentioned ſtraight, it may be left out in the former ſentence, as

Placent populo quas facio fabulas.	*Drink ye red, or white wine?*
Miror & intelligo tua verba.	*I ever did and ever will love you.*

No 3. That word on which lies any Emphaſis & force & that is ſpecially to be noted must never be left out

CHAP. XXII.

The Words in a Sentence may be tranſplaced.

Qu. *Which is the ſecond thing to be obſerved about Sentences?*

904. *Anſ.* II. The Latins uſe not to place the words of a Sentence in their *natural order* as they ly in ſence, but put them into ſuch order

der as will ſound ſweeteſt to the ear, ſo that the ſenſe be not thereby darkened, as for

Deus creavit hominem. Hominem creavit Deus. *or* Creavit Deus hominem. *or* Hominem Deus creavit. *or* Creavit hominem Deus. *or* Deus hominem creavit.

For Stulti pueri negligunt ſeria præcepta Præceptorum.
Seria Præceptorum præcepta ſtulti negligunt pueri.
or Præcepta præceptorum ſeria pueri ſtulti negligunt.
or Pueri ſtulti ſeria Præceptorum negligunt præcepta.
or Pueri ſtulti præcepta Præceptorum ſeria negligunt, &c.

905. N. B. *In the next Book all theſe things ſhall be taught you, more largely, fully and plainly.*

FINIS.

MVSEVM BRITAN NICVM

The Faults of the Preſs are thus to be mended.

PAge 3. *line* 4. *for* releive *read* relieve. *p.* 10. *l.* 12. *for* Chryſtal *r.* Cryſtal, *and for* Chryſtallus *r.* Cryſtallus. *p.* 10. *l.* 16. *for* Saphire *r.* Sapphire. *p.* 11. *l.* 27. *for* fragrum *r.* fragum. *p.* 11. *l.* 8. *for* Groun-worm *r.* Ground-worm. *p.* 11. *l.* 20. *for* Balena *r.* Balæna. *p.* 16. *l.* 37. *for* Nathaniel *r.* Nathanael. *p.* 17. *l.* 10. *for* Muſæum *r.* Muſēum. *p.* 19. *l.* 2. *for* Galrus *r.* Galērus. *p.* 19. *l.* 31. *for* Marriner *r.* mariner. *p.* 19. *l.* 36. *for* Nauta *r. or* Nauta. *p.* 22. *l.* 24. *for* Opis *r.* Op-us. *p.* 22. *l.* 14. *for* Charitās *r.* Charitās. *p.* 23. *l.* 28. *for* ōrum n. *r.* ōrum m. *p.* 24 *l.* 13. *for* Bibila *r.* Biblia. *p.* 25. *l.* 24. *for* ŏris m. *r.* ŏris n. *p* 25. *l.* 30. *for* Inis f. *r.* inis m. *p.* 25. *l.* 36. *for* Veſpĕr-i *r.* Veſper-is. *p.* 26. *l.* 27. *for* Pondo *or* libra *r.* Libra-pondo. *p.* 28. *l.* 19. *for* Præcŏx *r.* præcŏx. *p.* 29. *l.* 15. Formŏſus *r.* Formōſus. *p.* 35. *l.* 7. *for* Cujûs *r.* Cuj-us. *p.* 38. *l.* 37. *for* Brawl *r.* Bawl. *p.* 40 *l.* 26. *for* Opinare *r.* Opinari. *p.* 41. *l.* 24. *for* Tergēre *r.* Tergĕre. *p.* 48. 9. *for* Conditum *r.* Conditum. *and for* Conditus *r.* Conditus. *p.* 60. *l.* 13. *for* Eecl. *r.* Declenſion. *p.* 60. *l.* 20. *for* is *r.* īs. *p.* 60. *l.* 27. *for Sing.* Muſæ *r.* muſa. *p.* 61. *l.* 7. *for* Balena *r.* Balæna &c. *p.* 62. *l.* 17. *for* Mundŏrum *r.* Mundōrum. *p.* 63. *l.* 14. *for* To boys *r.* By boys. *p.* 71. *l.* 22 *for* Hæc ordo *r.* Hic ordo. *p.* 138. *l.* 18. *for* Verb *r.* Adverb. *p.* 132. *l.* 1. *for* First *r.* Third *p.* 138. *l.* 23. *for* Vadetis *r.* Vadebatis.

The very many Faults in the pointing, the Maſter is deſired to amend with his pen.